

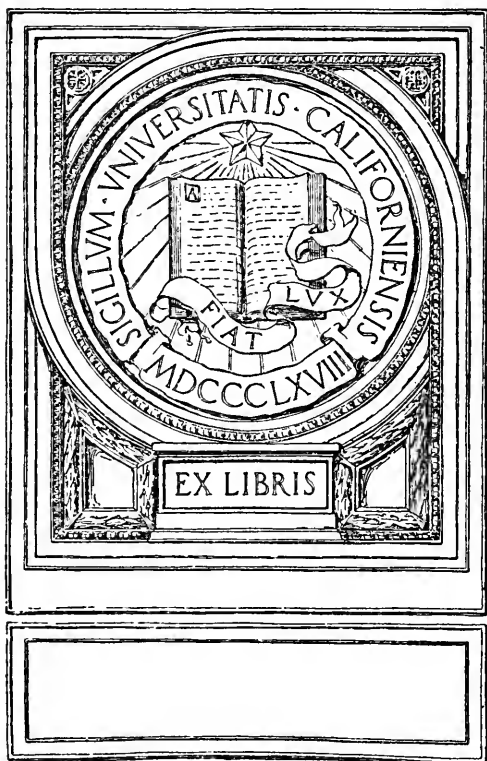
Inflections and Syntax  
of Malory's

MORTE D'ARTHUR

---

BALDWIN

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA  
AT LOS ANGELES



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

<http://www.archive.org/details/inflectionssynta00bald>







THE  
INFLECTIONS AND SYNTAX

OF THE  
MORTE D'ARTHUR

OF  
SIR THOMAS MALORY

A STUDY IN FIFTEENTH-CENTURY ENGLISH

BY

CHARLES SEARS BALDWIN

TUTOR IN RHETORIC IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE AND INSTRUCTOR IN ENGLISH  
LITERATURE AT BARNARD COLLEGE

BOSTON, U.S.A.  
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS  
1894

COPYRIGHT, 1894  
BY CHARLES SEARS BALDWIN

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED





# CONTENTS.

	PAGES
PREFACE .....	v-vii
ABBREVIATIONS AND BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	ix-x
NOUNS .....	1-6
{ INFLECTION .....	6-10
{ SYNTAX.....	
ADJECTIVES {	10-13
{ INFLECTION .....	13-16
{ SYNTAX.....	
PRONOUNS .....	16-20
{ INFLECTION .....	21-33
{ SYNTAX .....	
VERBS .....	34-52
{ INFLECTION — Strong Verbs.....	52-54
Weak Verbs .....	54-58
Present and Preterit .....	58-59
Anomalous Verbs .....	60-62
Preterit-Present Verbs .....	62-107
{ SYNTAX .....	
PREPOSITIONS .....	108-128
CONJUNCTIONS .....	128-143
APPENDIX.....	145-148
INDEX .....	149-156

Eng 2

11/14/1931

1/20

Parker



## PREFACE.

---

THE linguistic value of the *Morte d'Arthur* is equal to its literary value. The latter has been appreciated as deeply, if not yet as widely, as it deserves: it is the aim of the present work to realize the former. Malory's book is the type of the transition period between Chaucer and Spenser, of the progress of middle English toward modern English. As such it deserves closer study than it has hitherto received. In the only works that treat specifically of this period it has been lumped with other Caxton prints without respect to the unique claims of its unprovincial and scholarly character. Moreover the results obtained from a general examination of what has been called loosely the language of Caxton are quite insufficient. Römstedt's valuable *Englische Schriftsprache bei Caxton* treats only of phonology and, less completely, of inflections. The general survey of Caxton's inflections and syntax prefixed by Dr. Leon Kellner to his edition of Caxton's *Blanchardyn and Eglantine*, though often useful, is fragmentary and inadequate. Thus, for instance, no complete tables of strong verbs have yet appeared, and in syntax no discussion of the auxiliaries. Even the subjunctive and infinitive have been treated but imperfectly, and the particles hardly at all.

To develop a coherent account of the syntax, particularly of these neglected points of syntax, is the primary concern of the present work. The presentation of inflections,

though it aims to be exhaustive, is intended mainly to make sure this discussion of the syntax. Back of both lies phonology; but since Römstedt's best work was done here, and since here the individual value of the *Morte d'Arthur* is slightest — if, indeed, it is definitely ascertainable — the discussion of phonology has been made subordinate and incidental. The only deviation from this rule is the inquiry into the syllabic value of the plural *-es*, which has, therefore, been relegated to an appendix.

By limiting the discussion to one great text and to one main line of investigation, it has been possible to attain some degree of completeness. Moreover the collation of contemporary texts becomes, in great part, a cumbrous catalogue of dialectical variations, much more valuable for phonology than for syntax. Simplicity is perhaps preferable to completeness of this sort. Yet a series of interesting parallels from *The Wright's Chaste Wife* has been added in foot-notes. This text was chosen as being in several respects antithetical to the *Morte d'Arthur*. It is non-Caxtonian; it is non-literary, being a somewhat rude popular ballad; and it is provincial, being southern in dialect. Thus its divergences and its correspondences are equally significant. Other parallels have been drawn for points of special significance or difficulty, from Chaucer and from Shakspeare. But no attempt has been made at completeness in this regard, since the arrangement of the book is designed to facilitate reference and comparison.

For such reference and comparison, indeed, the book aims to be of service, not only to those engaged on the language of the fifteenth century, but to all students of English syntax. How far presentations of our modern syntax have been confused by ignorance or misapprehension of its historical development is painfully apparent. Even now historical syntax has gone but a little way. To

the small but happily increasing number of students in this field I shall be grateful for corrections and suggestions.

Citations from the *Morte d'Arthur*, whether single words or passages, are uniformly distinguished by italics. But in citations of any length the particular word in point is emphasized by difference of type. The references are by page and line to the reprint of Caxton's Malory edited by H. Oskar Sommer, and published by David Nutt. It is a pleasure to add that but for this great text the present work would have been practically impossible, and to acknowledge the incidental assistance of Mr. Sommer's notes and glossary.

In its original form this book was written as a dissertation in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at Columbia College. The successive expansions of the work have left me more and more deeply indebted alike to the kindness and to the scholarship of Professor Thomas R. Price. To Professor G. L. Kittredge, of Harvard University, I owe many valuable notes on the manuscript, and to Professor A. V. W. Jackson and Professor Henry A. Todd, of Columbia College, the favor of corrections in proof. I am under obligations, also, to Miss Sadie E. Bawden, of Smith College, and to Miss Ellen A. Hunt, of Barnard College, for the accuracy of the citations and the index. To all these friends I desire to express my sincere appreciation.

From this grammatical study as a necessary point of departure, I hope to proceed with such annotations, literary and critical, as may make some of the best books of the *Morte d'Arthur* available for class use.

CHARLES SEARS BALDWIN.

COLUMBIA COLLEGE, April, 1894.



## ABBREVIATIONS AND BIBLIOGRAPHY.

References to *Shakspeare* are to the lines of the Globe text; references to *Bacon*, unless otherwise specified, to the Golden Treasury edition of the essays (Macmillan). The incidental parallels from *Defoe* are cited from Ballantyne's Edinburgh edition, 1810.

<i>Abbott,</i>	A Shakespearian Grammar, by E. A. Abbott (Macmillan); cited by section.
<i>C. T.,</i>	Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, the Six-Text Edition of the Chaucer Society. <sup>1</sup>
<i>E. E.,</i>	Early English.
<i>F.,</i>	Modern French.
<i>G.,</i>	Modern German.
<i>Goth.,</i>	Gothic.
<i>Kellner,</i>	Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine, edited by Dr. Leon Kellner, Early English Text Society's Publications, Extra Series, lviii; preface cited by page and section.
<i>Kellner, Outlines,</i>	Historical Outlines of English Syntax, by Dr. Leon Kellner (Macmillan); cited by page.
<i>M. Du.,</i>	Middle Dutch.
<i>M. E.,</i>	Middle English.
<i>mod. E.,</i>	Modern English.
<i>O. E.,</i>	Old English (Anglo-Saxon).
<i>O. F.,</i>	Old French.
<i>O. N.,</i>	Old Norse (Icelandic).

<sup>1</sup> References to other Chaucerian poems are given in full.

- Römstedt*, Die englische Schriftsprache bei Caxton, Hermann Römstedt, Göttingen, 1891 (gekrönte Preisschrift); cited by page and section.
- Sievers*, Angelsächsische Grammatik, Edouard Sievers (Halle, Niemeyer); translated by Albert S. Cook (Boston, Ginn & Co.); cited by section.
- Sommer*, Le Morte Darthur by Syr Thomas Malory, the original edition of William Caxton now reprinted and edited by H. Oskar Sommer (London, David Nutt); vol. I, text; vol. II, introduction, glossary; vol. III, study of the sources; text cited by page and line.
- ❖ *Stratmann*, A Middle-English Dictionary, by Francis Henry Stratmann, new edition, revised by Henry Bradley (Oxford, Clarendon Press).<sup>1</sup>
- Ten Brink*, Chaucers Sprache und Verskunst, B. Ten Brink (Leipzig, Weigel).
- W.*, The Wright's Chaste Wife, edited from a MS. in the Library of the Archbishop of Canterbury (circ. 1462). by Frederick S. Furnivall, Early English Text Society's Publications, xii; cited by line.

<sup>1</sup> References to other dictionaries need no specification.



## NOUNS.

### THE PLURAL.

#### Plural in -s.

1. Barytone stems in *-l*, *-n* and *-r* invariably make the plural in *-s*. ✓

French : *quarels, cantels, peryls, mantels* : *montayns, regyons, courteyns, cosyngs* ; *sauours, colours, profers, prysoners*.

English : *sadels, handels, appels* : *tokens, maydens, chyckens* ; *ansuers, sholders, elders, hunters, faders*.

(a) Some barytones in *-k* and *-t* also make the plural in *-s* : *buttoks, carryks, fytloks* ; *varlets, brachets, buffets* ; and also *felushypts*.

#### Plural in -es.

2. The *-es* plural persists for the great majority of nouns.<sup>1</sup>

#### Plural in -ys (-is).

3. The proportion of *-ys* (*-is*) variants is about five per cent.

(a) The different books vary in the proportion of *-ys* plurals. Book XXI has five per cent.; Book XVII has only about two and one-half per cent.; but Book VI has eight per cent. The following is a list of all *-ys* (*-is*) plurals occurring, pp. 273-688, and 725-838 (VIII-XVI, and XVIII-XX, inclusive): *Instrumentys*, 276.31, 458.3; *frendys*, 308.17; *barrys*, 326.24; *crackys*, 326.25; *warris*, 328.9; *amendys*, 359.5, 506.30; *learys*, 371.4; *erys*, 371.4; *trainys*, 378.22; *tenty*s, 410.27, 734.28; *gamys*, 352.20;

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix.

*pappys*, 354.16; *peccys*, 420.14; *bendys*, 431.27; *wallys*, 441.18; *thretyys*, 457.31; *gatys*, *fallys*, 477.5; *dyntyys*, 487.13; *lustys*, 515.1; *lystyys*, 523.5; *wedys*, 539.11; *complayntyys*, 562.31; *expencyys*, 585.24; *offencyys*, 603.19; *fetyys*, 641.36; *membryys*, 649.34; *demenys*, 673.28; *perys*, 728.27; *perlyys*, 741.6; *turnementys*, 763.25; *barhys*, 764.32; *herhys*, 773.31; *sygnettyys*, 783.26; *bandys*, 804.9; *sarpys*, 822.30; *helys*, 822.32; *lordis*, 829.23; *sperryys*, 837.19; *restys*, 837.20.

Of these nouns, 12 are in *-t*, 7 in *-r*, 6 in *-d*, 4 in *-l*, 3 in *-c*, 2 each in *-n*, *-h*, and *-p*, 1 each in *-m*, *-k*, and soft *-g*.

As for the tonic accent, most are oxytone. There are two paroxytones (*membre*, *sygnet*), and two proparoxytones (*instrument*, *turnement*), both of which probably had in the plural a secondary accent on the last syllable.

(b) The *-ys* (*-is*) variant in the genitive and the plural of nouns is to be compared with the *-yr*, *-yst* of adjective comparison (§ 33), the adverbial *-ys* in *ellys*, the verbal *-yd* of the weak pret. and ptc., and the parallel forms *-ynge* and *-enge* of the pres. ptc. Cf. also the nouns *sadel* and *sadyl*, *coupel* and *coupyl*, *kyrtle* and *kyrtyl*, *cedle* and *sedyl*, *Safer* and *Safyr*, *Hongre* (Hungary) and *Hongry*.<sup>1</sup>

### Plural Invariable.

4. As in Chaucer, an apparent invariable plural occurs in many phrases with numerals, where it represents an older genitive:

- (a) *moneth*, in *twelve moneth*, etc.; elsewhere *monethes*.
- (b) *nyght*, in *fourten nyght*, 207.26; and *seven nygte*, 771.28.
- (c) *pound*, in *an honderd pound*, 177.28.
- (d) *weynter*, in *thre honderd weynter*, 645.6; but *many weynters*, 635.30.
- (e) *yere*, in *fourty yere*, 694.20; *ten yere*, 721.33, etc.; but *many yeres agone*, 705.15.

<sup>1</sup> W. wondyr, chambyr, tymbyr, monyth, swyngylle, hungyr, hosylle.

(f) *fadom*, in *ten fadom*, 784.11.

(g) *myle*, in *seven myle*, 229.11.<sup>1</sup>

Besides these Chaucerian forms, the following occur in the *Morte d'Arthur*:

(h) *cast*, in *two cast of brede* (bread), 234.8.

(i) *coupel*, in *thyrty coupel*, 355.33. Cf. also: *Thenne cam the foure sones by couple*, 154.29, which seems to indicate that the plural form is independent of the numeral.

5. The Chaucerian invariable plurals that are not to be explained as genitive survivals appear in the *Morte d'Arthur* as follows:

(a) *folk* occurs beside *folkes* and *folke*: *all folkes*, 262.13, *their folke*, 693.14.

(b) *good* survives: *ye shalle fynde there good oute of nombre*, 168.28. But *goodes* also occurs: *the thyrd parte of their goodes*, 525.2.

(c) *hors*, always makes plural *horses*.

(d) *neet*, *sheep* and *swin* do not happen to occur.

(e) *thyng*, appears beside *thynges*: *al maner of thyng*, 228.27; *alle thyng that he thought on*, 708.6; *to* (two) *thynges*, 723.16.

6. As in Chaucer, French nouns ending in a sibilant are invariable in the plural: *mareys*, *harneys*, etc.

### Plural in -en.

7. Of Chaucer's -en plurals only *bretheren*, *children*, *eyen*, *oxen*, and *kyen* appear; but two anomalous cases deserve citation:

<sup>1</sup> It is hard to tell whether *tydyng* is regarded as a singular or as a plural in the passage: *Whanne the word and tydyng came*, 120.35. (See *Stratmann*.) *Tydynges* is common. W. has: "Glad was þat lady of that tydyng," 571. In the phrase XV *fote long*, cited by Kellner, I, 3, p. x, *fote* is plural, not singular. The case is exactly parallel to those cited above.

# NOUNS — THE GENITIVE.

(a) *gamen*: *alle the blastes that longen to all maner of gamen*, 500.9. The form, though apparently meant for a plural, may be due to confusion with the older form of the singular.

(b) *synnen*: *he was ouertaken with synnen*, 638.18. Both forms may be dialectic survivals.

## THE GENITIVE.

### Genitive in -s.

8. Barytones in *-l*, *-n*, *-r* invariably make the genitive in *-s*.

French: *damoyseles*, *unkels*, *paucions*, *lyons*, *captayns*, *barons*, *prysoners*.

English: *deuyls*, *maydens*, *womans*, *fysshers*, *faders*, *broders*, *wynters*.

(a) French barytones in *-t* and proper nouns in *-d* usually make the genitive in *-s*: *bargets*, *forests*, *gyaunts*, *Isouds*, *Andreds*, *Galahads*, *Reynolds*.

(b) Many proper nouns in *-k* also make the genitive in *-s*: *Lamoraks*, *Sadoks*, *Euclaks*.

(c) The further extension of the *-s* genitive appears in *shyps* (708.9) and *Gareths* (811.31).

### Genitive in -es.

9. The discussion with regard to the syllabic value of the plural *-es* (Appendix A) applies also to the genitive *-es*, as in *childis*, *worldes*, *husbandes*, *goddes*, *lystes*, *knyghtes*, *kynges*, *arowes*, etc.

(a) The noun *forest(e)*, with excrescent *-e*, makes genitive *forests*. Double forms occur for the commonest nouns: *mans* and *mannes*, *launcelots* and *launcelottes*.

(b) The *-ys* (*-is*) variant is very rare. Only two cases occur in the one hundred pages comprised in VI, VII and XVII. VIII and IX have two cases each.

**Genitive Invariable.**

**10.** The genitive sign is often omitted in the following cases:

(a) When the noun ends in a sibilant:<sup>1</sup> *hors croupe*, 341.30; *Hermaunce dethe*, 522.13; *the abbesse chamber*, 612.30; *Patryse dethe*, 733.13. But *Gaheryse wordes*, 401.2, and *Gaheryses sheld*, 401.26, occur on the same page, and there are other exceptions, as *Patryces tombe*, 736.19.

(b) when the succeeding noun begins with a sibilant: *Kyng Lott of Orkeny sone*, 108.32; *la beale Isoud sake*, 559.11. Cf. *Accolon swerd*, 130.12, with *Accolons hand*, 130.19.

On the other hand, *woodes syde*, 745.24; *Elyses sone*, 486.32; *Galyhodyns spere*, 492.26; *forests syde*, 392.32.

(c) in nouns of kindred:<sup>2</sup> *of fader syde and moder syde*, 280.34; *syster children*, 299.38; *brother children*, 306.14. Cf. *Sievers*, 285. But aside from these set phrases the nouns of kindred usually take the -s genitive.

(d) in a few cases that seem to be survivals of the O. E. weak feminine genitive: *our lady daye*, 738.12; *herte blood*, 682.2; *herte rote*, 798.4; *herte wyllc*, 855.2. It is not easy to distinguish such cases from ordinary compounds.

The F. noun *raunge* seems to make an invariable genitive in the phrase *at the raunge ende*, 481.10.

Chaucer has "lady grace," "herte-spoon," "widow sone," "sonne upriste" (*Morris*, xxxiii, 2).

(e) in a few unexplained cases, usually where the genitive is separated from the noun it modifies: *Of Joseph kynne*, 94.11; *this helme is syr Gareth of Orkeny*, 262.25 (where Wynkyn de Worde's edition omits *helme*); *sir launcelot owene land*, 829.33; *for thy sake and for syr Garwayne*, 207.11. In this last case, however, the explanation may lie in the force

<sup>1</sup> W. For Ihesus loue, 471; by his hows syde, 523.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Chaucer's "fader day," "doughter name," etc.

of the *for*. Cf. *I pray you hertely to be my good frend and to my sones*, 406.27, where the construction changes in a similar manner; and a similar case with pronouns: *to your worship and to us al*, 250.3.

### The Dative.

**11.** The *-e* of the dative singular is no longer distinguishable as a case sign. See the examples under § 20.

### Graphical Variations.

**12.** The neutral *e* of a derivative suffix sometimes appears as *a* or as *y*.

(a) *-ar* for *-er*: *Iustar*, 441.29; *wyllars*, 465.15; *causar*, 269.21; *daggar*, 466.19; *lyttar*, 473.1. Cf. mod. E. "liar" (*lyar*, 618.20).<sup>1</sup>

(b) *-al* for *-el*: *myustral*.

(c) *-hyl* for *-ble*: *conestahyl*, 469.8.

**13.** The syncope seen in the plural of Chaucerian nouns in *-el* and *-er* seems to have extended in the singular. But it appears as a mere graphical variation: *sabel* and *sable*, *sedy* and *cedle* ('schedule'), *nomber* and *nombre*. So *anger*, *angre*; *honger*, *hougre*; *sholder*, *sholdre*; *sklaunder*, *sklaundre*.

## SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

**14.** Abstract nouns are sometimes used in the plural: *lete us two preue oure strengthes*, 193.32; *doo you scruyse as maye lye in oure powers*, 251.3; *to redresse the harmes and scathes that he had of them*, 464.13; *as it pleased them bothe at tymes and leysers*, 474.34; *she chaunged thenne her colours and for wrathe she myght not speke*, 550.21; *alle men — spake of the beaute of dame Elayne and of her grete Rychesses*, 581.24. So *goodnesses*, 304.38; *myrthes*, 500.1.

<sup>1</sup> W. carpentar, 586.

✓ (a) *Buryellys*, 851.11, may show simply the persistence of the O. E. singular “birgels.” *Rescowses*, also, may be due to the M. E. singular “rescous” (O. F. *rescousse*): *we wil do rescowses as we can*, 373.31, *whan Gryflet sawe rescowses he smote*, etc., 55.25. *Spyrytueltees* is used of consecrated ground: *lete very hym—in the spyrytueltees*, 724.9.

15. A plural often takes a singular article or demonstrative, to show that it is considered collectively. This usage appears constantly in many common phrases with numerals: *this thre myle*, 190.33; *this seven yere*, 199.13; *a XXX grete knyghtes*, 206.14; *a fourty yere*, 694.20; *an eyght dayes*, 694.28; *a ten or twelue knyghtes*, 704.6; *this shal be my two gyftes*, 216.23.

16. The reminiscence of the partitive genitive with numerals (§ 4) appears curiously in sporadic cases. Thus the ordinary *eyght score helmes*, 191.10, is followed in the next line by *four score of helmys*, 191.11. Cf. also *XXX coupyl houndes*, 65.30.

17. The familiar construction of the genitive in an *of*-phrase, where the genitive is apparently expletive, occurs freely:<sup>1</sup> *a knyghte of the dukes*, 37.7; *a knyȝte of Kyngge Arthurs*, 263.31.

18. When a noun is modified by a genitive on which an *of*-phrase depends, the order is usually as in the following: *the quenes broder of Irland*, 279.16 (i. e., the brother of the queen of Ireland); *the lordes cosyn of this place*, 398.27. Sometimes, however, the modern form appears: *Kyngge Faramon of Fraunces doughter*, 279.32.<sup>2</sup> A further variety appears in *at the porche of the paucelions dore*, 36.30.

<sup>1</sup> Kellner, I, 5, c., p. xix, has an elaborate discussion of this construction.

<sup>2</sup> Kellner (p. cviii) cites two cases of this construction from *Blanchardyn*.

**19.** A single survival of the genitive with an adverb of time appears in *forth dayes* (late in the day), 804.19.

**20.** The dative survives in the following constructions:

(a) Dative of Indirect Object: *gaf hym kyng Lott*, 54.18; *promysed hit kyngc Arthur*, 114.30; *I dyd neuer this knyght no harm*, 205.14; *he — made hit and taughte hit an harper*, 457.35 (but in the very next line, *he taughte hit to many harpers*).<sup>1</sup> Similar is: *I had assygned my lady to haue slepte*, etc., 189.10.

The indirect object with *tell* is kept in the passive: *Thenne was hit tolde the quene*, 339.33.

(b) Dative with Impersonal Verbs (rare): *So the kyngc semed veryly that there came syr Gawayne unto hym*, 844.14; *it lyked your hyghenes to graunte me my bone*, 276.10; *sir Bors semed that there came the whytest douue* (dove), 579.16.

(c) Dative of Interest (rare): *the laye that sire Dynadan made kyngc Marke* (i. e., in disparagement of King M.), 458.1; *I saued Alysaunder his lyf*, 469.22; *these traitours steeve one of Sadoks cosyns a grete wound in the neck*, 495.8. *Ihesu forgyue it thy sowle*, 812.28; *there was none of the twelue that myghte stande sir launcelot one buffet*, 803.10.

**21.** The Adverbial Objective is confined, in the main, to phrases of time: *Thenne stood the reame in grete icopardy long whyle*, 40.3; *I haue folowed that best long tyme*, 65.38; *hurlynge lyke two bores the space of two houres*, 226.36. In the following, *the lyf* is probably a phrase of time: *and ye wylle fyghte — ye shall be delyuerd — and els ye escape neuer the lyf*, 127.23. Cf. § 22 b.

**22.** Apposition shows some noteworthy peculiarities:

(a) Apposition occurs occasionally where a single noun and a modifier might be expected: *sore I am of these*

<sup>1</sup> The *to*-phrase occurs occasionally where even mod. E. has preserved the dative: *tolde to Lucius* (Caxton's Rubric), 11.12.



*quenes sorceresses aferd*, 187.27; *the mescreaunts Sarasyns*,<sup>1</sup> 465.20.

(b) The following cases are perhaps to be explained as partitive appositions: *to enoynte the maymed kyng both his legges and alle his body*, 720.7 (but *kyng* may be a dative); *syr lucan took up the kyng the one parte and Syr Bedwere the other parte*, 848.5; *wel armed and horsed and worshipfully bysene his body*, 253.18; *he shal haue batail of me his fylle*, 569.32; *a man of kyng Euclaks was smyten his hand of* (off), 626.15; *I shold slee the myn owne handes*, 556.11. Some of these cases, perhaps all, may be explained as adverbial objectives.

(c) Apposition in the genitive assumes almost invariably the following form: *his broders sheld syr Lyonel*, 185.6; *my two bretheren sheldes syre Ector — and syr Lyonel*, 196.4; *your broders dethe the black knyghte*, 224.34; *on the moder syde Igrayne*, 65.5; *by my faders soule Utherpendragon*, 70.10. Cf. § 18. Sometimes, however, the following form occurs: *the good knyghtes sir Marhaus seate*, 424.5.

(d) The ordinary apposition with *of* in the case of names of places (*the Cyte of Sarras*, 706.13) shows a curious extension in one instance, which may be a misprint: *the good knyghte (of) syre Gawayne*, 244.18.

**23.** The use of nouns as verbs points toward the freedom of the Elizabethan habit: *thou couragest me*, 282.26; *they wold not wrathe them*, 374.18; *they peaced them self*, 405.31 (possibly a verb from *F. apaiser*. See Stratmann, *païsen*); *the quene had mayed* (i. e., gone maying), 773.30; *for to strengthe the dethe of the quene*, 810.27 (possibly due to loss of *-n* from *strengthen*. See Stratmann, *s. v.*).

**24.** The construction with the noun *maner* is in a state of transition.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Römstedt, p. 38, regards *mescreaunts* as an adj. with the Romance plural *-s*.

<sup>2</sup> For further explanation of this construction see *Köllner*, I, 5, p. xvii.

(a) Chaucer's usage survives: *al maner thyng*, 118.31; *in this manere wyse*, 74.22; *what maner knyghte*, 262.21; *in that maner clothing*, 856.9.

(b) But usually *maner* is followed by an *of*-phrase. The two constructions occur side by side in the following: *alle manere rules and games with al manere of mynstralsy*, 271.25.

**25.** The nouns *merueylle*, *nede*, *pyte*, *reson* and *wonder* are used in the predicate with the force of their corresponding adjectives.

(a) *Merueylle me thynketh — why ye rebuke*, 225.4; *it is merueill that ye make such shameful warre*, 235.10; *it was merueil to here*, 251.28.

(b) *socoure me for now it is nede*, 706.35; *hit is none nede to telle yf they were glad*, 717.7.

(c) *hit was pyte to here*, 850.5; *it was pyte on to behold*, 58.9; *grete pyte it was of his hurte*, 94.13.

(d) *to yelde vs into hym it were no reson*, 200.37.

(e)<sup>1</sup> *it was wonder to telle*, 53.31. *Wonder* is also used attributively: *a wonder dreme*, 52.35; *a wonder turnement*, 689.8.

## ADJECTIVES.

**26.** Such distinctions of inflection as survived in the Chaucerian adjective are in the *Morte d'Arthur* completely blurred, not so much through the loss of *-e* where it belongs, as through the addition of *-e* where it does not belong.

<sup>1</sup> W. shows an adverbial use of *wonder*: *A wondyr strange gyle*, 93.

Cf. also the use of *payne*: *Me thynketh yt gret payne*, 339.

Plural *-e*.

27. The plural rarely occurs without *-e*, even in the case of paroxytone adjectives: *subtylecraftes*, 207.23. But the *-e* may be dropped at random: *al ladyes*, 197.3; *his good dedes*, 219.29. Compare *foure quenes*, 212.19, with *four knyghtes*, 203.28. Moreover, *-e* appears in the singular: *shrewde herberowe*, 375.7.

Weak Inflection *-e*.

28. Again the *-e* is rarely absent where Chaucer's adjectives assume it to mark the weak inflection. But compare *the fayre faucon*, 208.16, with *your fair felauship*, 213.33; *at the thyrd stroke he slewe the thyrdde theef*, 219.22.

Vocative *-e*.

29. The vocative usually shows *-e*: *fayre syre*, 235.25; *yonge knyght*, 282.13; but *fayr knyghte*, 221.24; *fals traitresse*, 294.27; *A my lytel sone*, 274.10.

30. The adjective inflection<sup>1</sup> in the *Morte d'Arthur* may be summarized, then, as follows:

(a) The vast majority of adjectives show *-e* in all connections.

(b) The inflectional significance of *-e*, if not lost, is at least plainly fading.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For the survival of the strong genitive plural *alther* see § 71. A Romance plural in *-es* occurs at 514.31: *knyghtes errauntes*; but *knyghtes erraunt* occurs on the next page, 515.18. Römstedt (p. 38) cites two Romance plurals in *-s*: *most valyaunts men*, 83.31, and *the mescreaunts Sarasyns*, 465.20. The former is probably a contract superlative, the *-t* having been dropped by the type-setter (see § 36). The latter may be a case of apposition (see § 22, a).

<sup>2</sup> The same wavering appears in the adverbial *-e*: *yll(e)*, 240.23, 223.25; *streight(e)*, 213.32, 241.32; *long(e)*, 204.14, 232.15.

**31.** The *-y* variant found in the *-ys* noun plural, the *-yd* preterit, etc., appears also in the adjective. Thus we find *comen* and *comyn* (common), *often* and *oftynen*, *tender* and *tendyrly*, *lytel* and *lytyl*, *unable* and *unahyl*. Cf. §§ 12, c; 33.

**32.** The comparative and superlative show the regular *-er* and *-est*. The comparative, as in Chaucer, shows no inflection. The remarks in the foregoing sections apply as well to the superlative as to the positive.

**33.** A variant *-yr* for *-er* in the comparative, and *-yrt* for *-est* in the superlative, occurs very rarely: *reufullyr*, 425.16; *strengyst*, 69.3; *gentelyst*, 390.13; *fressheyst*, 763.23. Cf. §§ 12, c. 31.

(a) Another rare variant in the comparative is *-ar*: *byggär*, 96.25; *eldär*, 105.23. Cf. § 12, a.

**34.** *Farre* makes comparative *ferther* and *further*; *yll*, *werse*,<sup>1</sup> superlative *werst*; *lytel*, *lesse* and *lasse*, superlative *lest*; *hyghe* (*hyhe*), *hyher*; *longe*, *lenger*, superlative *lengest*; *strong*, superlative *strengest*. *Old* shows *eldest* and *oldest* in the same sense. The superlatives *uttermost* and *formest* persist without variation. *Nere* survives as comparative adverb, with *ere* and the superlative *erst*.

**35.** Dissyllabic and even trisyllabic adjectives take the *-est* superlative: *famousest*, 278.22; *worshipfullest*, 210.18. A similar habit in the comparative appears in *abeler*, 658.1.

**36.** These longer adjectives, however, when they end in a sibilant, and even in other cases, often make a contract superlative: *perylloust*, *merueylloust* (*merueylllest*), *orgulist*, *curteyst* (*curtest*), *myztest*, *gentylst*, *tyllynst*. Even monosyllabic adjectives sometimes contract to avoid the repetition of sibilants: *fyerst*, from *fyers* (fierce).

<sup>1</sup> Comparative *werre*, 87.30, may be a misprint, but cf. O. N. *verre*.

## Adverbs.

**37.** Adverbs in *-ly* from proparoxytone adjectives in *-ous* sometimes appear in contract forms: *felloynsly* (*felloynous*), *traytoursly* (*traytourous*). In *lycours* (for *lycourous*), 771.34, the contraction appears in the adjective.

**38.** The adverbial (genitive) *-es* (*whyles*, 724.36) appears very rarely with an excrescent *-t*: *whylest*, 229.1.

**39.** The *-er* comparative is used freely: *a rycher besene chamber*, 126.11; *bare hym backer and backer*, 351.22; *smote hym harder and sorer*, 413.4; *neuer were there foure knyghtes euener matched*, 486.16.

**40.** The comparative *-er* and the superlative *-est* are sometimes added even to *-ly* forms: *there was neuer kyng — falslyer nor traitourlyer slayne*, 520.10; *there was neuer no lady more rychelyster bysene*, 580.33; *suche peple as he myght lytlyest reue*, 120.21.

**41.** The double comparative is common: *he foughte more lyker a gyaunt*, 218.2.

## SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

**42.** The double comparative and superlative are common: *more gladder, more leuer, more hardyer; moost royallest, moost shamefullest, moost lordlyest*.

(a) Except in these double forms, the *more* — *most* comparison appears very rarely: *more hyghe*, 222.16.

**43.** The construction exemplified by Milton's "fairest of her daughters, Eve," appears in *thou art fayrest of alle other*, 435.25; cf. also *Now shalle eueryche of vs (three) chese a damoysele. I shalle telle yow sayd syre Vwayne I am the yongest and moost weykest of yow bothe, therfor, etc.*, 144.27.

44. The superlative is used occasionally in comparisons of two: *as for sir launcelot and sir Tristram — the twerst of them wille not be lygh(te)ly matched*, 439.16.

45. The use of adjectives as nouns is not so extensive as in Chaucer, being confined in the main to adverbial phrases: *at certayn, in certayn, in close* ('secretly'), *unto the twers, at her large* ('at liberty'), *on al foure* ('on all fours').

(a) Sometimes a freer use appears: *ther lacked nothyng that myghte be gotten of tame nor wyld*, 268.21; *thow shalte haue many felawes and thy betters*, 663.25.

46. Of adjectives used in pairs, one often stands after its noun, with the indefinite article repeated: *an horryble dede and a shameful*, 211.13; *a passyng fayr lady and a yonge*, 117.9; *a ful fair maner* ('manor') *and a ryche*, 126.34; *a grete wounde and a peryllous*, 412.25.

47. *Hoole* is used sometimes with the plural: *the hoole barons*, 53.25.

48. *More* is used of quantity, size, etc.; *mo*, of number. *He seyth lytyll and he doth moche more*, 124.15; *wylle ye more*, 591.14; *make thow no more langage*, 827.20; *mo other houndes*, 125.24; *many mo*, 163.25; *mo men*, 590.35.

(a) The adverbial use seems to be confined to *more*: *the more beholdyng*, 640.11; *chafed more than he ought to be*, 653.26; *he ranne ȕpon hym more and more*, 675.26.

(b) *Moch* and *moost*, as well as *more*, are used of size, strength, rank, etc., in the sense of 'great': *this moche yong man*, 213.31; *more of* ('in') *prowesse*, 80.27; *a more myght*, 298.3<sup>1</sup>; *my most foo*, 80.10; *the moost charge*, 468.5.

<sup>1</sup> W. If he myght ower gete owte

Att hole lesse or mare, 320.

*Lasse* occurs in the sense of 'fewer': *there was none of them both that had lasse woundes than XV*, 591.20.

**49.** *Other* is used sometimes in the sense of 'different': *he is al another man than ye wene*, 163.1 ('very different from what you think'); *another maner knyght than ever was I*, 351.4.

(a) The ordinal use of *other* survives in one passage: *he rode alle the other* ('second,' 'next') *daye*, 243.14.<sup>1</sup>

**50.** *Self* has sometimes the sense of 'same': *the self daye*, 722.29.

**51.** *Suche*, when used with a noun accompanied by a numeral, commonly stands before the numeral: *suche two douzty knyghtes*, 220.28; cf. also *suche fyfty as ye be*, 167.15; *suche fyue as ye and I be*, 426.38.

## SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

### Adverbial Suffixes.

**52.** The most important suffixes are as follows:

(a) -feld, *blyndefeld*.

(b) -forth (occasionally used as an adverbial suffix): *the swan is whyte withouteforth*, 682.19; *they on kyng arthurs partye kepte the syege with lytel warre withoutforth, and they withinforth kepte theyr walles*, 836.27.

(c) -hand, *euen hand* ('quits'), *nerchand, afore hand*.

(d) -longe, *endelonge*.

(e) -lynge, *flatlynge, grouelynge, nosclynge, sydelyng, poyntelynge*, 578.2.

(f) -ward, *ageynward, away ward, oute ward, thens ward, westward, whether ward* ('whither').

(1) *Ward* often stands, by a sort of tmesis, after the noun of a prepositional phrase: *to the world ward*, 720.19; *to hym ward*, 27.17; *ouer see ward*, 33.26; *to the deth ward*, 70.27.

<sup>1</sup> W. Than yt fell on þat oþer ('second') daye, 205.

(2) The contraction *southard*, 153.8, serves to indicate the pronunciation.

(g) where and whyle (sometimes used as adverbial suffixes): *weyde where*, *other whyle*, *ther whyle(s)*.

(h) The suffix *-ly* having both adjective and adverbial force, adjectives in *-ly* make no change for the adverbial use: *he was cowardly led away*, 146.38; *I slewe hym knyghtely*, 223.17; *thanked her goodely*, 264.31; *she ansuerd — ful womanly*, 103.14; *gyrdels — semely wroughte*, 699.27.

### Relative Adverbs.

**53.** The relative adverbs (originally interrogative) are *where*, *wherin*, *wherof*, *wherewith*, *wherefor*, *where thurgh*, *where vpon*, *whens*, *whydder*, etc.

(a) The redundancies *from whens* and *of whens* are common.

(b) *There as* and *there* are used as relative adverbs: *the place there she lay*, 95.22; *the other parte there as the hede stak*, 248.32.<sup>1</sup>

---

## PRONOUNS.

---

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

<b>54.</b> <i>I</i> ,	<i>thou</i> , <i>thow</i> , <sup>3</sup>
<i>my</i> , <i>myu(e)</i>	<i>thy</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>thyn(e)</i> ,
<i>me</i> .	<i>the</i> .
<i>we</i> ,	<i>ye</i> ,
<i>our(e)</i> , <i>ours</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>your(e)</i> , <i>yours</i> ,
<i>us</i> .	<i>you</i> , <i>yow</i> .

<sup>1</sup> For conjunctive adverbs see under Conjunctions.

<sup>2</sup> W. *oure*.

<sup>3</sup> W. also *thowe* and *þi*.



<i>he,</i>	<i>she,</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>it, hit,</i> <sup>4</sup>
<i>his, hys,</i>	<i>her, hers,</i>	<i>his,</i>
<i>hym;</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>hir, hyr;</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>it, hit (hym):</i>

*they,*  
*their(e), theyr(e), her.*<sup>5</sup>  
*them, hem, (theym).*<sup>6</sup>

55. *My*, though commonly attributive, is sometimes predicate. *Ours* is predicate.

56. With very few exceptions, the distinction is kept between the nominative *ye* and the objective *you*.<sup>7</sup> In the following, the first *you* may be a dative of interest: *therfore chese you whiche of you shalle entre — fyrste*, 349.20. There are no plain cases of objective *ye*. *Yours* is predicate.

57. The neuter-genitive *his* is rare, its place being supplied by the definite article or the adverb *therof*: *there came a fygur in lykenes of a chyld, and the vysage was as red — as ony fyre*, 719.8; *fonde the tombe of kynge Bagdemagus, but he was founder therof Joseph of Armathyes*, 716.16.

58. The use of *hym* with reference to antecedents without life requires full citation: *that ryngc encreaceth my beaute moche more than it is of hym self*, 257.30; *the pomel was of stone, and there was in hym alle manere of colours*, 692.18; *as for this suerd there shalle neuer man begrype hym*, 692.31. *Beaute* is an O. F. feminine; *pomel* is an O. F. masculine:

<sup>1</sup> W. also *hyme* and in two cases *hem*.

<sup>4</sup> W. *yt*.

<sup>2</sup> W. *sche*.

<sup>5</sup> W. also *ther*, and *her* only once.

<sup>3</sup> W. also *herre*.

<sup>6</sup> W. *hem* and *tham*.

<sup>7</sup> Kellner (p. xiii) cites eight cases of nom. *you*. Seven occur in imperative phrases, and of these, six are in the phrase *wete you wete*. The seventh is at 255.16, *send you vnto syr Persaunt*. The remaining case is in a conditional clause: *but you sped*, 206.6. In all these cases *you* is used for the second person singular. W. has two cases.

*suerd* alone is an O. E. neuter (*sweord*, *swyrd*). Since all three would be regarded as neuter in English, the cases may indicate a provincial survival of the neuter dative. They suggest, however, anomalous confusion of genders.

59. Anomalous confusion of genders appears, at any rate, in the following passages: *themme shold ye perysshe the shyp for he is so parfyte he wylle suffre no synner in hym*, 692.5 (O. E. *scip*, strong neuter); *anone as Abel had receyued the dethe vnder the grene tree he lost the grene colour and becam reed*, 696.29 (O. E. *trēow*, strong neuter); *the shyp was anone shouen in the see, and he wente soo faste*, etc., 699.10; *bere with the this holy vessel. For this nyght it shalle departe — for he is not scrued — to his ryghte*, 719.38 (O. F. *vessel*, masc.); *wente into the grete stone, and he was so heuy that an C men myght not lyfte hyt* 77, 125.5. Less significant is: *a Faucon — flewe unto the clme to take her perche — she henge by the legges — syre launcelot sawe howe he henge*, 208.14, 15. Cf. also: *the chyualry hath ben at alle tymes, soo by the fraternyte whiche was there that she myght not be ouercomen. For men sayd she was founded in pacvence and in humylyte*, 668.33 (chevalerie is a F. feminine); *loue is free in hym selfe, and neuer wille be bounden*, 762.22. (It is possible that personification is intended in some of these cases.)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

60. *that*,<sup>1</sup> pl. *tho*; *this* (*thys*), pl. *these*<sup>2</sup> (*this(e)*).

61. The plural *this(e)*, (*thyse*) is rare: *ye may not leue this aduentures*, 105.1; *this englyssh men*, 840.31; *alle thise landes*, 520.15; *this two mette*, 626.2.

<sup>1</sup> *That*, at 196.28, may be a survival (*Römstedt*, p. 42), or it may be a misprint.

<sup>2</sup> W. also *thes*, but the case is doubtful: what doo *thes* meyny here, 585, where "meyny" is a collective singular with a plural verb.

**62.** Römstedt cites from the *Fourre Sonnes of Aymon* one case of *thilk* and one case of the plural *thoos* (p. 41).

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**63.** The simple relatives are *that*, *whiche*, *what*, [*who*]<sup>2</sup> *whos*, *whoos*, *whom(e)*, *the whiche*, *whether*.

**64.** The compound relative forms are as follows:

(a) compounds with *that*: *who that*, *whos that*, *whiche that* (*that that*), *what that*.

(b) compounds with *as*: *that as*, *whether as*.

(c) compounds with *so* (*soo*), *so euer*, *someuer*: *who so*, *what so*, *what soo euer*, *what someuer*, *whom someuer*, etc.

(d) compounds with *that* and *euer*, etc.: *what that euer*, *who so that*.

**65.** *That* is by far the commonest simple relative, the other forms occurring with comparative infrequency, and the nominative *who* not at all. *Who* does, however, occur as a general relative in the sense of 'he that,' or 'whoever': *who is aferd let hym flee*, 226.3.

**66.** *Whether* is a general relative, meaning 'whichever of the two,' and is very rare: *there with alle was made hostage on bothe partyes — that whether party had the vycory, soo to ende*, 463.6.

**67.** *The whiche*, though comparatively infrequent, still survives, probably through the influence of F. lequel, which gave it birth.

**68.** The form *that that* is hardly parallel with the others. It is a mere periphrasis for *what* (that which), as its composition implies, and occurs very rarely: *nowe I see that that hath ben my desyre*, 723.8.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> W. All that that ys here-yn, 393.

**69.** *Whether* as is very rare. It is used in the sense of 'whichever of the two': *whether as hym lyst hym self*, 230.15.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**70.** The indefinites are *all* (*al*), *bothe*, *echone*, *cueryche*, *cuerychone*, *cyther*, *neyther*, *men*, *nobody*, *one*, *none*, *ony*, *other*, *somme*.

**71.** The strong adjective genitive plural of *al* appears once: *it is hym self kynge Arthur our alther liege lord*, 134.1. This represents Chaucer's "alder" in "alderbest," "alderwerst," "alderfirst."<sup>1</sup> Chaucer's more regular form, "aller" ("oure aller cok," C. T. 823), has disappeared.<sup>2</sup>

**72.** *Bothe* makes an anomalous genitive to agree with *our* at 98.8: *to our bothes destruction*. Cf. § 86.

**73.** The indefinite *me* has disappeared, and *men* is regarded as a plural (*men sayen*, *men callen*, etc.). But *men saith* occurs once, 136.13; and *man* once: *the largest handed that euer man sawe*, 213.27.<sup>3</sup>

**74.** *Other* has plur. *other* invariably.

**75.** *Somme* is still used in the singular in the sense of 'any,' 'a certain': *whan a good knyghte doth soo wel vpon somme day*, 260.25.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. "mine alderliefest sovereign," *Henry 6*, pt. II, I, 1. 28.

<sup>2</sup> A half-survival appears in two cases: *he that was alle oure leder*, 585.10, 753.26. Defoe has "for all our advantages." *Captain Singleton*, I, vii, p. 157.

<sup>3</sup> The case cited by Kellner (p. xlvii) is doubtful: *a man told me in the castel of four stones that ye were delyuerd & that man had sene you in the court of kynge Arthur*, 83.3. That before the second *man* may be a demonstrative, in which case the second *man* would have the same sense as the first.

# SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

## Personal Pronouns.

76. The plural forms of the second person are used commonly for the singular. Singular and plural forms are often used indiscriminately in the same passage: *we understande your worthynes that thou arte the noblest knyght lyuyng*, 187.1.<sup>1</sup>

77. After the distributive *euery*, the plural of the third person is often used loosely for an indefinite singular: *euery man losed other of their boundes*, 196.16; *euery knyghte wente their way*, 401.35.<sup>2</sup>

78. In rare cases the *of*-phrase displaces even the pronoun genitive: *they made grete Joye of the comynge of hym*, 780.13; *the sculle of hym*, 843.10; *the cors of her*, 856.31.<sup>3</sup>

79. The redundant partitive genitive in an *of*-phrase is already common: *a felawe of myne*, 193.24; *a woode of his*, 695.29; *a cosin of hers*, 701.38. Cf. also: *of foure of hem he brake their backes*, 191.19.

NOTE. — Kellner (p. xxxvi, d) remarks: “*His* instead of the genitive inflexion is very rare,” and cites four cases. Of these the one from *Blanchardyn* (48.35) and the one from *Charles the Grete* (28.1) seem indisputable. The two from the *Morte d'Arthur*, however, are open to objection. They are as follows:

(1) *this lord of this castel his name is syr Damas*, 126.27. Of this Kellner himself remarks that it is “not exactly equal to a genitive.” It is, in fact, one of the many instances of transition syntax. The ordinary construction would be *the lordes name of this castel is syr Damas* (see § 18). But this construction was beginning to fade, and there are one or two instances of the mod. E. order (*kyngre Faramon of Fraunces*

<sup>1</sup> W. For godys loue change *thy* mode,  
Forty marke schalle be *your* mede. 156.

<sup>2</sup> W. Euerych in *ther* manere, 588.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Kellner, p. xvi, 4.

*doughter*, 279.32). Meantime loose and tentative makeshifts like the above appear for a season. The sentence cannot fairly be said to indicate a substitution of *his* for the genitive inflexion. It is simply an anacoluthon.

(2) *For the fyrste knyghte his hors stumbled*, 220.30. This again is a case of anacoluthon, as appears from the context: *And the last knyghte by myshap thou camyst behynde hym*. In both cases the noun *knyghte* is loosely separated, in the enumeration, from the construction of the rest of the sentence. It is possible also that *for* is not a conjunction, but a preposition (see § 332.2).

### 80. The Dative Case appears as follows:

(a) Dative of Indirect Object: *he took it hym*, 263.1; *he — bytoke hit me*, 673.28; *there were brought hym robes*, 92.20; *there was none that wold behote hym the lyf*,<sup>1</sup> 284.33.

(b) Dative of Interest: *who shall lete me blood*, 706.1; *to lette hym the passage*, 220.13; *made hym a large wounde*, 176.27; *saue me that knyghtes lyf*, 646.14; *he commanded hym the wyn*, 351.1; *a knyghte — withhelde her alle her landes*,<sup>2</sup> 480.16; *syr Pelleas was soo stronge there myght but fewe knyghtes sytte hym a buffet with a spere*, 159.20; *yf thou mayst stande me thre strokes*, 283.4.

(c) Dative with Adjectives and Interrogatives and the Verb *to be*: *whether is me better*, 87.22; *hym lothe were*, 230.31; *it were me leuer*, 121.31.<sup>3</sup>

But this construction is visibly fading. More frequently appears: *thou were better*, 264.8; *lothe I were to slee the*, 203.17; *Gareth is to me more leuer*, 269.11; *I had* (§ 245, a) *leuer*, 229.4.

<sup>1</sup> W. The good wyfe rawte hym a rocke, 503; Gold and syluer they me brought, 589; Mete and drynke sche hym bare, 244. But also: Syr, and I graunte that to you, 301.

<sup>2</sup> Defoe shows some interesting survivals: "killed them abundance of men between decks," *Captain Singleton*, I, xi, p. 255; "wounded us a great many men," *Memoirs of a Cavalier*, p. 51; "killed us about a hundred men," *ibid.* p. 189. (*Bohn's edition*).

<sup>3</sup> W. hym was full fayne, 66; Better is me thus to doo, 383.

(d) Dative with Impersonal Verbs (see § 312). The commonest collocations are: *me forthynketh*, 713.23; *me semeth*, 202.30; *me repenteth*, 185.25; *the behoueth*, 187.5; *how lyketh yow*, 215.26; *hym happend*, 200.2; *hym besemeth*, 220.4; *hym lyst*, 230.15; *hym neded*, 216.35; *hym thought*, 184.5.

(e) For the gradual change to the personal construction see § 312 a. But for the fading of this dative cf. also: *it pleasyd to her*, 255.15; *now befalleth it to me*, 191.26; *a lady soo ledde the where thou semyd thy broder was slayne*, 682.25; *al thyng that to hym neded*, 278.15.

**81.** The confusion of cases that appears in Elizabethan English is as yet barely apparent: *neuer man but he*, 42.4; *no mo but thou and I*, 326.10;<sup>1</sup> *made hym passynge good chere and wel easyd bothe his hors and he*, 112.30. Cf. § 56.

**82.** A pronoun subject is often omitted when it can be supplied readily from the context: *the whiche greued his herte*, and [he] *promysed to reuenge his broder*, 185.8; and *launcelot after hym with al his myght and [he] smote hym*, etc., 199.7; and *there were brought hym robes to his pleasyr*, and [they] *wold haue had Balen leue his swerd*, 92.22.<sup>2</sup>

**83.** A pronoun subject is sometimes repeated redundantly: *the black knyght within an houre and an half he felle*

<sup>1</sup> Kellner (p. xiii, b) gives cases from other works printed by Caxton. At p. xv he generalizes so far as to say that “*but* and *sauf* don’t govern the accusative as prepositions, but are followed by the nominative, as if they were conjunctions.”

W. Lett no man wete butt *we* two, 302; Yheue me some mete — of that the wyfe *ye* brought, 492. Confusion of cases may lie at the bottom of the following: Or ellys to deth mutt *me*, 432. The equivalent of this curious construction occurs several times in the poem. It may be based on an anomalous or dialectic use of *mete* and *moste*. Cf. Yet must *us* worke for owre mete, 481.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Kellner, p. xxxii, e.

*doune*, 222.24; *the herte whanne he is old he waxeth younge ageyne*, 703.20.<sup>1</sup>

**84.** Furthermore the reference of pronouns is often careless, confused and ambiguous: *he lystned and herd an hors come, and one rydyngre vpon hym, and whanne he cam nygh he semed a knyghte. And soo he lete hym passe, and wente there as the shyf was; and there he alyghte, and toke the sadel and the brydel and putte the hors from hym*, etc., 708.21.

**85.** Prolepsis sometimes occurs: *aspyed hym what he had done*, 210.30; *beheld hym how he — lusted*, 261.24.

In the following the pronoun subject is both proleptic and expletive: *he was the founder therof Ioseph of Armathyes sone*, 716.16.

**86.** The distinction is firmly kept between the partitive construction with numerals, etc., and the construction of simple agreement. Thus, e. g., *twelve of them*, but always *alle they*, *we alle*, *you bothe*, etc., never *all of them*, *bothe of you*, etc. Note the following: *that one spere hath feld vs al foure*, 204.27; *they sayd al*, 204.28; *and they were syxe mo*, 220.16; *they bledde bothe*, 223.31; *of theyr bothe sorowes*, (Caxton's rubric); *ye al Barons*, 39.29; *yet were they fyfty M*, 53.13; *both they had many woundes*, 111.25; *with his both handes*, 444.36.<sup>2</sup>

**87.** The simple personal pronouns are still in active use as reflexives,<sup>3</sup> but the intensive forms are far more common than in Chaucer. *I fele myself* — *weery*, 543.20; *I enforce my selfe*, 544.10. The two often exist side by side. Thus we have *drede hym* and *drede hym self*; *kepe hym* and *kepe hym self*, etc. (For a list of the commonest collocations see § 313.)

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Kellner*, p. xxxi, d.

<sup>2</sup> W. And ther they be all thre, 594.

<sup>3</sup> W. As good as thou

We hold vs that be here now, 478.



## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**88.** The collocation *and that*, in the sense of the Greek καὶ ταῦτα, occurs frequently: *I shalle shewe yow somme to morne — and that merucyllous*, 145.12; *shal make the torne agcyne and that hyghtly*, 219.36.

**89.** As a demonstrative adjective, *that* is often used before an infinitive as equivalent to *such*: *Allas — that euer a kechen page shold hane that fortune to destroye suche — knyghtes*, 220.28. Cf. also: *he — took the gaynest waye in that woodenes that many tymes he was lyke to perysshe*, 243.31, where a clause takes the place of the infinitive. A similar use of *that*, before adjectives, survives as a modern provincialism. “He was *that* tired he couldn’t stand.”<sup>1</sup>

**90.** *This* is sometimes used of persons, without any following noun: *this shall neuer preue none suche. For syr Brexenor desyred euer worship and thys desyareth brede & drynke*, 215.1.

**91.** *That* survives here and there as an article: *that one hyghte kynge Ban, and that other hyght kyng Bors*, 47.28. But *that one sawe the other*, 695.6. Besides this common collocation, a few phrases like the following occur: *By that tyme that cyther had sene other*, 193.29; but they are only sporadic.

**92.** Chaucer’s contraction *atte* (at the) has disappeared. The form *atte* is merely a graphical variant of the simple preposition *at*: *atte my windowe*, 201.14; *atte all tymes*, 724.35.

**93.** The definite article is sometimes contracted, as in Chaucer, with a word beginning with a vowel: *thestate*,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kellner, p. xxvii, f.

*thother, thauns, thaffray, thoppynyon, thabyte, thempyre, thoryent, thold, thende, thordre, thaunture, thystory, therth, thacheuyng, thabby.* These forms are less common than in Chaucer. They are not invariable, and they occur most frequently in Caxton's preface, rubric and colophons.

94. The definite article often occurs, as in Chaucer, where it would be expletive in modern usage: *from the dethe*, 201.18; *here at the hande*, 213.17; *whyle me lasteth the lyf*, 131.19; *plonged ouer the hede*, 243.30; *as it had ben the thonder*, 267.2; *at the nyghte*, 690.27; *the yonder knyghte*, 146.1; *holdyng ȝp their handes toward the heuen*, 659.1; *dranke the ȝyn*, 231.10. The construction is probably due to French influence.

#### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

95. All four interrogatives, *who*, *whyche*, *what* and *whether* are used in both direct and indirect questions.

96. *Whether* keeps its proper sense, 'which of the two,'<sup>1</sup> *whether lyketh yow better — the suerd or the scaubard*, 74.2; *ye shal stande betwixe them both, and whether ye lyst better to go to, he shal haue yow*, 146.24. But sometimes it is displaced by *whiche*: *we thouȝt to preue whiche of ȝs bothe was better knyȝt*, 105.29.

97. *What* is used of persons in the sense of *who*: *asked her what she was*, 231.22; *Nowe wotest thou what I am*, 723.12.<sup>2</sup>

(a) *What a* in the sense of 'what sort of' occurs at 72.21: *I told you — what a knyghte he was*.

<sup>1</sup> The interrogative *whether* survives in Defoe: "we might get a great deal or a very little, we did not know *whether*." *Captain Singleton*, I, vii, p. 157.

<sup>2</sup> W. *What deuylle art thou*, 316 (i. e., 'who the devil art thou?'); Fayne would I wete *what* they were, 541.

**98.** Chaucer's adverbial use of *what* in the sense of 'why' is very rare: *what profyrst thou proude knyghte the so boldly*, 176.13.

**99.** *Who* is used (rarely) with a following partitive genitive, where *whiche* is usual: *syre Cador tolde who of his knyghtes were slayne*, 172.S.<sup>1</sup>

# RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**100.** *That* is by far the commonest relative, occurring alike in restrictive and non-restrictive clauses.

**101.** *That* is used as equivalent to *that which*, or *what*: *the vertu of my ryng is that that is grene it will torne to red*, 257.31; *now haue I certefyed the of that thou stodest in doubte*, 697.16; *there may noo man hold that wille aweye*, 300.27.<sup>2</sup>

**102.** *Whiche* and *the whiche* are used as adjectives: *smote hym on the hede whiche stroke stynted not*, etc., 170.15; *to the whiche tente our knyghtes rode*, 169.20.<sup>3</sup>

**103.** The use of *whiche* with reference to persons is too common and regular to need citation.

**104.** *Which* is sometimes used after *so* and *such*, where the proper correlative is *as*: *I haue none soo hyghe a thyng whiche were worthy to susteyne soo hyghe a swerd*, 698.10.

<sup>1</sup> W. shows a compound interrogative form *what that*:  
The stuard stode the wryght by,  
And of his garlond hadde ferly ('wonder')  
*What that* yt be-mente, 259.

<sup>2</sup> W. *Yheue me some mete* (ye be to blame),  
Of *that* the wyfe ye brought, 491.

So Bacon: "when a man lets fall Signes and Arguments, that he is not *that* he is." *Of Simulation and Dissimulation* (Wright, 19.25).

<sup>3</sup> W. Of roses whyte that wyll not fade,  
Whych floure all ynglond doth glade, 668.

(a) *That* is used in like manner: *who myghte be soo blessid that myght see openly*, etc., 712.20. But the correlation with *so* is frequently irregular (see *so*, § 385.4).

**105.** The ordinary sense of *what* ('that which,' 'whatever') is retained in its adjective use: *a mayde in what place she cometh is free*, 704.5; *delyuer hym to what poure man ye mete*, 39.6 (where *what* is used, as frequently, of a person).

**106.** *What* occurs sometimes as an indefinite in the sense of 'somewhat,' 'some': *Thenne there felle to them what of Northwalys and of Cornewaille—to the number of a four score knyghtes*, 805.5.

(a) *What*—*what* is used with prepositional phrases in the sense of 'partly—partly': *what for drede and for loue they helde their pees*, 75.24; *they rode fresshly—what by water and what by land*, 101.9; *what forwounded and what forbled*, 350.26.

**107.** *Whos* and *whom* are sometimes used of antecedents without life: *the floure of the lyly, in whome ryrgynyte is sygnefyed*, 715.29; *oure lord sente hem the Sangreal, thorow whoos grace they were al waye fulfilled*, 722.13.<sup>1</sup>

**108.** The compound forms with *that* are regular in Chaucer. *That* was originally appended, it is likely, to indicate the relative force of a form properly interrogative, just as it was appended to adverbs, etc., to indicate their conjunctive force (see § 388.4). In both cases *that* gives the word to which it is appended the force of an introductory particle.

**109.** Of these compound relative forms, —

(a) *what that* and (usually) *who that* are general relatives: *I shall abyde what auenture that cometh*, 110.36; *what*

<sup>1</sup> For the use of *but* as a relative see § 361.2.

*tresour that there in this castel is I gyue it you*, 199.28;<sup>1</sup> *who that vseth peramours shalle be unhappy*, 198.12; *he badde the lordes — come after who that wold*, 267.38;

(b) but an oblique case of *who that* is also used as a simple relative: *he myghte more auayle the than thyn armour in whos scruyse that thou arte sette*, 710.19.

(c) *whiche that* is a simple relative: *he told hym of the aduentures — whiche that he knewe*, 715.13.

**110.** *That as* is very rare. It is used in the sense of 'that that' or 'what': *But that as syre launcelot dyd was of his grete gentylnes*, 215.16. The appended *as* has the same force as the appended *that*, and is so used in Chaucer to make relative adverbs ('ther as'), but not to make relative pronouns (cf. § 359.8).

**111.** All the other compound forms have the force of general relatives.

**112.** The attempt to express the genitive of the relative gives rise to some noteworthy periphrases: *ye are the same knyghte that I lodged ones in your Castel*, 266.15; *a gentylwoman whiche we and this castel is hers*, 705.13; *there came a man that sire Tristram — had slayne his broder*, 327.10; *that was she that Breunys saunce pyte took that sheld from her*, 345.11; *hit is not thy parte to dispryse thy pryncesse that thou arte under their obeyssaunce*, 358.14. The commonest resort is to the adverbial form *wherof*, which is used of both persons and things: *many angels — wherof one helde a candel*, 711.15. All these forms are inherited or extended from Chaucerian usage.

Note, on the other hand, the rare construction: *that lady whos was the chamber*, 343.13.

<sup>1</sup> W. Thowe wylt worke, yf thou hungyr welle,  
What worke that the be brought, 356.

**113.** Thus it appears that Chaucer's relative periphrasis ("that — he," "that — his," etc.) survives, almost of necessity, in the genitive. A few sporadic instances<sup>1</sup> show that it is lingering in the nominative:<sup>2</sup> *Now tourne we vnto sire Trystram that vpon a daye he took a lytel Barget*, 330.24; *here is a worshipfull knyght sir Lamorak de galys that for me he shalle be lord of this countreye*, 334.1; *now torne we this tale vnto syre Tristram that by aduventure he cam to a castel*, 407.20. All three instances are from the Tristram books.

**114.** A restrictive relative may be omitted, even in the nominative: *there ben knyghtes here wolde doo her power for to rescowe your lady*, 216.14; *he was the knyght in the world was moost welcome to her*, 190.13; *where is the lady shold mete vs here*, 146.14; *I shalle sende hym a gyfte shalle please hym*, 101.2.

**115.** Even a non-restrictive relative may be omitted: *thenne was he ware of a Faucon came fleyng over his hede*, 208.11; *they sawe knyghtes al armed came in — and dyd of their helmes*, 718.1.

**116.** When the antecedent is a personal pronoun it is sometimes omitted: *thou to loue that loutht not the is but grete foly*, 237.17; *to whome I shold be moost debonair shall I be most felon*, 694.18.

<sup>1</sup> Cited by Kellner, p. xli.

<sup>2</sup> The persistence of this periphrasis appears in the following passage from Defoe: "one was a wolf, one a fine spotted young leopard, and the other (*plural*) were creatures *that* we knew not what to call *them*." *Captain Singleton*, I, vii, p. 169. Even to-day ignorant people sometimes take refuge in this form, when their relative constructions become involved.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**117.** *All thyng* is used in the sense of 'everything': *all thyng is unhappy that is aboute hem*, 198.13.<sup>1</sup>

**118.** *Eyther* is sometimes used in the sense of *bothe*: *eyther knyghtes departed in sondre* —, 226.31.<sup>2</sup>

**119.** *One* is used in comparisons with *so* — *as* without adding any apparent meaning or force: *so worthy a knygt as he was one*, 87.34; *suche yong knyghtes as he is one*, 251.25. But these scattered instances may mark the intensive use that is evident in the following: *thou arte the goodlyest yong man one that cuer I sawe*, 214.18; *the worthyest knyghte of the world one*, 685.19.

**120.** *One* is used sometimes in the sense of 'a certain,' very much like the indefinite article: *that shalle be at one tyme*, 694.19. The ordinary phrase is *on a tyme*, *on a daye*, etc.

**121.** *None* is sometimes used for *neyther*: *none of them bothe*, 97.24.

**122.** So *ony* is sometimes used for *eyther*: *ony of them both*, 87.19; *ony of yow both*, 523.25.

**123.** *Ony* is used as an intensive in comparisons (see *one*, § 119): *he is as lykely a man as cuer ye sawe ony*, 233.19; *ye be as fayr a lady as cuer I sawe ony*, 509.8.

**124.** *Ony* is used in the sense of *somme* in the following:

<sup>1</sup> Cf. "It had been as a gap in our great feast,

And *all-thing* unbecoming," *Macbeth*, III, 1. 13.

where "all-thing" means 'altogether,' 'in every respect.'

<sup>2</sup> For *eyther* in the sense of 'each' see § 132 (c).

*Hope ye so that I maye ony whyle stand a proued knyght,*  
218.14 (*ony whyle* = some time).<sup>1</sup>

**125.** *Other* has full pronominal force and is used, in both sing. and plur., without the article: *the one of vs shal make an ende of other*, 194.29; *euerychone after other* (one after another), 76.33. Cf. 132, d.

**126.** *Other* is sometimes used with a half-conjunctive force, like *besides*: *syr beriel & other* (plur.) *syr Morys and syr Maurcel*, 172.9. This appears most commonly in the phrase *moother* (others besides, more besides): *moother louers*, 508.29.<sup>2</sup>

**127.** *None other* is used in the sense of 'nothing else': *I dyd none other but as I wold ye dyd to me*, 95.32.<sup>3</sup>

**128.** *He* is sometimes used as an indefinite, especially in the genitive: *that euery lord and lady shold go vnto his rest*, 247.29;<sup>4</sup> *though alle the world were here ryght now he coude not deuyse wherfor*, etc., 698.27.

**129.** *A certayn* occurs as an indefinite, as in Chaucer: *a certayn of the traytours*, 495.3.<sup>5</sup>

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

**130.** The intensive forms are made, as in Chaucer, with *self(e)* and *owne*; but the following peculiarities are noteworthy:

<sup>1</sup> *Ony the other eyght*, 2.1 (Caxton's Preface), is not paralleled elsewhere. Kellner (p. xvii) regards it as a case of apposition instead of the partitive construction. It is perhaps a printer's error.

<sup>2</sup> Kellner (p. xvii) seems to regard the use of *other* in the phrase 'Other her gentyll women,' *Blanchardyn*, 76.31, as parallel with the use of *maner* explained at § 24 (*what maner knyght*, etc.).

<sup>3</sup> For the adjective use of *other* see § 49.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. § 77.

<sup>5</sup> For the indefinite use of *what* cf. § 106.



- (a) *Self(e)* is the invariable form for singular and plural.<sup>1</sup>  
 (b) The incongruous forms show that *self* keeps its original adjective force, but is coming more and more to be regarded as a noun. Thus we have — *hym self, them self, hem self*, but *my self, thy self, your self, their self*.<sup>2</sup>

**131.** The intensive form is sometimes used alone as subject: *hym selfe was ledde in to a fayre chamber*, 190.9.<sup>3</sup>

### RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

**132.** The reciprocals are *eche other*, *eueryche other*, *cyther other* and simple *other*. All of the pairs occur both side by side and separated by intervening words: thus:

- (a) { *eche other*: *we wil helpe eche other*, 83.18.  
       *eche — other*: *thenne lete they renne eche to other*,  
               704.18.
- (b) { *eueryche other*: *wounded eueryche other*, 97.21.  
       *eueryche — other*: *eueryche told other of their aduentures*, 708.37; *eueryche knewe other*, 691.11.
- (c) { *cyther other*: *they graunted cyther other to rest*, 238.35.  
       *cyther — other*: *cyther of hem smote other*, 258.18;  
               *many a grymme worde was there spoken cyder to other*, 846.8.

(d) The persistence of *other* alone as a reciprocal is sufficiently noteworthy to need full exemplification: *they drewe their swerdes and smote egerly at other*, 220.19; *the red knyghte and syr Bors smote other*, 259.28; *whanne that one sawe the other, they made grete Ioye of other*, 695.7; *Nowe some galahad said launcelot — we shal departe, and neuer see other*, 709.35.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Römstedt (p. 42) cites *they them seluen* from *Reynard the Fox*, 86.13.

<sup>2</sup> For *self(e)* as an adjective in the sense of 'same' see § 50.

<sup>3</sup> "Is that the law?"

*Thyself* shalt see the act." — *Merch. Ven.* IV. 1.305.

<sup>4</sup> *To gyder* is sometimes used with reciprocal force: *they dyd of their helmes and kyssed to gyder*, 707.24.

## VERBS.

## THE STRONG VERB.

In the following tables the forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* (printed always in *Italics*) are exhibited parallel with the Chaucerian forms given in Ten Brink's lists. The Chaucerian forms are given first in each case, and are distinguished by difference of type.

Since the distinction between the preterit singular and the preterit plural has disappeared (§ 152), only the former is given.

Where a verb shows shifting toward the weak conjugation, the weak forms are put in brackets.

Conjectural forms are marked by parentheses.

## REDUPLICATING VERBS.

133.	{ bete	beet	beten
	{ <i>bete</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>bete</i>	<i>bete(n)</i>
	{ blowe	blew	blowen
	{ <i>blowe</i>	<i>blewe</i>	<i>blowen</i>
	{ falle	fel, fil	fallen
	{ <i>falle</i>	<i>felle, fyl, fylle</i>	<i>falle(n)</i>
	{ growe	grew	growen
	{ <i>growe</i>	<i>growe</i> [ <i>growed</i> <sup>2</sup> ]	<i>growen</i>
	{ hewe		hewen
	{ ( <i>hewe</i> )	<i>hewe</i> [ <i>hewed</i> <sup>3</sup> ]	<i>hewen</i>
	{ hōlde	heeld	hōlden
	{ <i>holde</i>	<i>held(e)</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>holde(n)</i> <sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in *Italics*.

<sup>2</sup> *growed* occurs once, 276.32.

<sup>3</sup> *hewed* occurs once, 318.30; *hewe* twice, 170.18, 249.22.

<sup>4</sup> W. has also *hyld*.

<sup>5</sup> *wel and truly haue ye hold your promyse*, 420.4; *she had behold hym longe*, 343.18.

{ honge	heeng	
{ hange	henge	[hanged <sup>1</sup> ]
{ hōte	heet, heēt	hōten
{ behote <sup>2</sup>	[hyghte]	
{ knowe	knew	knownen
{ knowe	kneȝe	knowe(n) <sup>3</sup>
{ throwe	threw	throwen
{ throwe	threȝe	throwen

**134.** *Lepe, lēte, slepe, and weepe* have gone over entirely to the weak conjugation.

#### ABLAUT VERBS.

The classification is that of Sievers (*Angelsächsische Grammatik*, 381). Reference to Ten Brink's classification (*Chaucers Sprache und Verskunst*, 136) may be made with the aid of the following table:

Sievers.	Ten Brink.
Class I (§ 382).	Class III (§ 153).
" II (§ 384).	" IV (§ 156).
" III, 1 (§ 386).	" I, A, b (§ 139).
" III, 2, 3, 4 (§§ 387-389).	" I, A, a (§ 139).
" IV (§ 390).	" I, B (§ 142).
" V (§ 391).	" I, B (§ 142), C (§ 145).
" VI (§ 392).	" II (§ 140).

Citations are given for the rarer forms.

<sup>1</sup> *hanged* occurs once, 624.14; and *behanged* once, 125.32.

<sup>2</sup> *there was none that wold behote hym the lyf*, 284.33; *Heeteth* occurs once: *What heteth your lady*, 216.3.

<sup>3</sup> *Kno* occurs in Caxton's Preface (1.18), at the end of a line

The ptc. *mowen* occurs at 228.17. The verb seems not to occur in Chaucer. See *Stratmann*, 'mawen.'

## CLASS I.

135.	O. E.	i	ā	i	i
	<i>Chaucer</i>	i	q̄	i	i
{ byde	bqqd			(a)biden	
{ <i>abyde</i> <sup>1</sup>	(a)bode <sup>2</sup>			(a)byden	
{ byte	bqq̄t			biten	
{ <i>byte</i>	<i>boot, bote</i>				
{ dryve	drqqf			driven	
{ <i>dryve</i>	<i>droof(e), drofe</i>				
{ ryde	rqqd			riden	
{ <i>ryde</i>	<i>rod(e)</i> <sup>3</sup>			ryden	
{ ryse	rqq̄s			risen	
{ (a)ryse	(a)roos, (a)rose			(a)rysen	
{ ryve	rqqf				
{ <i>ryve</i>	<i>roof(e), rofe, rafe</i> <sup>4</sup>			<i>ryuen, [ryued]</i> <sup>5</sup>	
{ shryve				shriven	
{ ( <i>shryve</i> )	[ <i>shryued</i> ]			<i>shryuen</i>	
{ shyne	shqqn				
{ <i>shyne</i>	<i>shone</i>				
{ slyde					
	<i>slode</i> <sup>6</sup>				
{ smyte	smqq̄t			smiten	
{ <i>smyte</i>	<i>smote</i>			<i>smyten</i> <sup>7</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.<sup>2</sup> *abode*, 196.32, 690.6; *bode*, 850.31.<sup>3</sup> *rod*, 388.22. A weak pret. *rydde* occurs in Blanchardyn, 83.27.<sup>4</sup> *rafe*, 596.18.<sup>5</sup> *ryued*, 290.12.<sup>6</sup> *slode*, 58.21.<sup>7</sup> *smyte*, 696.1 (passage perhaps corrupt).

{	(bi)stryde	(bi)strȳd	
	(be)stryde	(be)strade	
{	stryke	strake, stroke <sup>2</sup>	strike(n) <sup>1</sup> stryken
	stryve	strȳf	
{	stryue	stroof <sup>3</sup>	
	thryve		
{	(thryue)	throfe	
	wryte	wrȳt	writen
{	wryte	wrote	wryten <sup>4</sup>
	wrythe		
{	wrythe	wrothe <sup>5</sup>	

**136.** The rare preterits *raf* and *bestrade* may be due to the analogy of Class IV. Stratmann cites *raf* and *strad* from "Iwain and Gawain" (about 1400).

<sup>1</sup> *Stryke* does not appear in Ten Brink's lists, but the ptc. occurs in "Merciles Beaute."

Love hath my name *y-strike* out of his sclat,  
And he is *strike* out of my bokes clene.

(Chauc. *Minor Poems, Skat*, VI, 35.)

<sup>2</sup> The pret. *straked* (370.14) is from a weak verb *strake*. See Stratmann, *strakien*.

But a weak pret. *stryked* does occur in *Reynard*, 66.2, 71.26 (Römstedt, p. 42, I, 3).

<sup>3</sup> *stroof* (O. F. *estriver*) is a purely analogical formation (see *Ten Brink*, 154). It occurs only in Caxton's Rubric, 10.17. Römstedt cites *strof* (Reynard, 83.34).

<sup>4</sup> W. *wretyn*.

<sup>5</sup> *wrothe* (326.17, 595.27) seems not to occur in Chaucer, though the ptc. *writhen* appears. Stratmann cites 'wrooth' from Wiclif.

## CLASS II.

137. O. E.	ēo(ū)	ēa	u	o
<i>Chaucer</i>	ē, ū	ē	ū	ō
{ cheese	cheȝes			choȝen
{ <i>chese</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>chose</i>			<i>chosen</i>
{ cleeve	[clefte]			clȝven
{ <i>cleue</i>	<i>claf(e)</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>clauē</i> , [clefte]			<i>clouen</i>
{ flye	fleigh, fley			flowen
{ ( <i>flye</i> )	<i>flēwe</i> <sup>3</sup>			
{ seethe	sēȝth			soden
{ ( <i>seethe</i> )				<i>soden</i>
{ shouue	shoof			shoven
{ ( <i>shoue</i> )	<i>shouc</i> , <i>sheef</i> <sup>4</sup>			<i>shouen</i>

**138.** *Clafē* is probably made, like 'haf' in Chaucer (heve), after the analogy of *gafē* (*yeue*, Class V). Langland has "clēf"; Maundeville, "cleef."

For the *eo* in *flēwe* see *drewe* and *shēwe*, Class VI (§ 151).

**139.** *Chose* is due to confusion with the participle, which also explains the prets. *crope* and *frore* cited by Römstedt (Reynard, 27.22, 82.10). Cf. foot-note on *sheef*, and see *Stratmann*, *crēopen*, *frēosen*.

**140.** *Sheete* has passed over to the weak conjugation, and so have *crepe* and *frese*, save for the rare and anomalous forms cited above.

<sup>1</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.

<sup>2</sup> *Claf*, 689.22; *clauē*, 93.4.

<sup>3</sup> Römstedt cites *flough* (Aymon, 39.10).

<sup>4</sup> *Sheef*, 624.29; *shouc*, 173.12. *Sheef* is the proper preterit singular, Chaucer's "shoof" having intruded from the plural and the participle. See *Stratmann*, *schuven*.

## CLASS III.

(1)

**141. Verbs in nasal + consonant.**

O. E.	i	q, (a)	u	u
<i>Chaucer</i>	i	q, a	u	u
{ biginne	(bi)gan		bigonnen	
{ <i>begynne</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>began, beganne</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>begonne</i>	
{ bynde	bōnd		bounden	
{ <i>bynde</i>	<i>bond(e), bound(e)</i>		<i>bonde(n), bounde(n)</i>	
{ clymbe	clōmb		clomben	
{ <i>(clymbe)</i>	<i>clamme</i>			
{ drinke	drank		dronken	
{ <i>drynke</i>	<i>drank(e)</i> <sup>3</sup>		<i>dronken</i>	
{	flong			
{ <i>flynge</i>	<i>flang</i>			
{ fynde	fōnd		founden	
{ <i>fynde</i>	<i>fond(e), found(e)</i>		<i>fonde(n), fond, founde(n)</i>	
{ grynde			grounden	
{ <i>(grynde)</i>			<i>groundyn</i> <sup>4</sup>	
{ renne	ran		ronnen	
{ <i>renne</i>	<i>ran, ranne</i>		<i>ronne</i>	
{ ringe	rōng		rongen	
{ <i>ryngē</i>	<i>rangē</i>			

<sup>1</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.<sup>2</sup> *beganne* is the more common form.      <sup>3</sup> W. has pret. *drunke*, 488.<sup>4</sup> *groundyn* occurs only once, and then as an adjective: *With a groundyn glayue he threst hym in behynde to the herte*, 807.18. The passage sounds like a reminiscence of some older alliterative romance.

{	singe	sɔŋg	songen
{	<i>synge</i>	<i>sange</i>	<i>songe</i>
{	sinke	sank	sonken
{	( <i>synke</i> )	<i>sanke</i> , [ <i>synked</i> <sup>1</sup> ]	
{	springe	sprɔŋg	sprongen
{			<i>spronge</i> <sup>2</sup>
{	stinge	stɔŋg	stongen
{	<i>stynge</i>	<i>stonge</i>	<i>stongen</i>
{	swimme	swam	swommen
{	<i>swymme</i>	<i>swamme</i> <sup>3</sup>	
{	thringe	thrɔŋg	throngen
{	( <i>thrynge</i> <sup>4</sup> )	<i>thrang(c)</i>	
{	winne	wan	wonnen
{	<i>wynne</i>	<i>wan</i> , <i>wanne</i>	<i>wonne(n)</i>
{	wringe	wrɔŋg	wrongen
{	<i>wrynge</i>	<i>wrong</i> , <i>wrange</i> <sup>5</sup>	

**142.** The confusion of preterital and participial forms, or rather of the preterit singular with the preterit plural, appears in the preterits *bounde* and *founde*.

**143.** The preterits *clamme*, *sange*, *thrang* and *wrange* (*a* for Chaucer's *e*) have ample earlier warrant (see *Stratmann*, s. 77.).

<sup>1</sup> *sanke*, 350.25, and *synked*, 838.18, occur once each. W. has ptc. *sonke*.

<sup>2</sup> W. has pret. *sprang*.

<sup>3</sup> A pret. *swange* occurs at 294.21. *Swynge* does not seem to occur in Chaucer, nor elsewhere in the *Morte d'Arthur*.

<sup>4</sup> Sommer (Glossary) prints *threng*, but cites no instance.

<sup>5</sup> *wrong*, 168.14, and *wrange*, 389.36, occur once each.



**144.** The preterit *flang* is from a rare verb borrowed, probably, from O. N. *flengja*. Ten Brink does not give the form in his lists; but Skeat (*Dict.*) cites *flong*, C. T., 17255. It seems to occur first about 1300, in *King Alisaunder* (Weber's Metrical Romances). Most of the instances cited by Stratmann are from northern poems of considerably later date (1380-1460). It is quite likely a northern provincialism. The analogy of *synge*, *sang*, etc., has drawn the verb into this class, just as *strive* (O. F. *estriver*) was drawn in Chaucer's time into III, by the analogy of *dryve*, *droof*, etc. (p. 37, foot-note 3).

(2)

**145. Verbs in *l* + a consonant.**

O. E.	e	ea (ā)	u	o
Chaucer	e	a	u (q)	q (q̄)
{ helpe	halp		holpen	
{ helpe <sup>1</sup>	halp(e), holpe, <sup>2</sup> helpe <sup>3</sup>		holpen	
{ swelle	swal		swollen	
	swalle <sup>4</sup>			
{ yeelde			yȳlden	
{ yelde	[yelded <sup>5</sup> ], yelde, yolde <sup>6</sup>		[yelded], yolden, <sup>7</sup> yelden <sup>5</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.

<sup>2</sup> *holpe*, 856.20 (see § 152).

<sup>3</sup> *helpe*, 24.4, Caxton's Rubric.

<sup>4</sup> *swalle*, 729.1.

<sup>5</sup> *yelded*, pret., 13.23, and *yelden*, ptc., 13.1, occur only in Caxton's Rubric.

<sup>6</sup> *yelde*, 39.38; *yolde*, 189.23. The older pret. is *ȳeald*, *pl.* *ȳulden* (*Stratmann*, *ȳelden*).

<sup>7</sup> *yolden* is the regular form for the ptc. 180.29, 201.1, 228.6, 704.4.

## (3)

146. Verbs in *r* or *h* + a consonant.

O. E.	eo	ea	u	o
<i>Chaucer</i>	e, i	a	u (q)	q
{ breste <sup>1</sup>	brast			brqsten
{ <i>breste</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>brast(e)</i> , <i>breſt(e)</i> <sup>3</sup>			
{ fighte	faught			foughſten
{ <i>fyghte</i>	<i>faught(e)</i> <sup>4</sup>			<i>foughſten</i>
{ kerve	karf			kqrven
{ <i>kerue</i>	<i>carfe</i> [ <i>kerued</i> ] <sup>5</sup>			

## CLASS IV.

147. O. E.	e	æ	ǣ	o
<i>Chaucer</i>	ē	a	ē, ē (ō)	q̄ (u)
{ bere	bar, beer, beq̄r			bq̄ren, bq̄rn
{ <i>bere</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>barc</i> , <i>bere</i>			<i>boren</i> , <i>born(e)</i>
{ breke	brak			brq̄ken
{ <i>breke</i>	<i>brak(e)</i> , <i>brack</i> <sup>6</sup>			<i>broken</i>

<sup>1</sup> Berstan, on account of its pret. in *æ* (bærst), is relegated by Sievers, with a few other verbs, to a separate division (4) of Class III (*Sievers*, 389).

<sup>2</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.

<sup>3</sup> Römstedt (p. 43, III, 2) cites a pret. *to broste* (Aymon, 478.13).

The preterit *wrast* (326.16, 368.4) may be due to the analogy of *brast*. See *Stratmann*, *wræsten*.

<sup>4</sup> Römstedt (p. 43, III, 2) cites a pret. *fought* (Fneydos, 8.27).

<sup>5</sup> *carfe*, 111.24, 689.25; *kerued*, 158.13.

<sup>6</sup> *brack*, 48.18.

{	come	cam, coom	comen
	<i>come</i>	<i>cam(c), come</i>	<i>come(n)</i>
{	(neme)	nam, noom	nomen
			<i>benome</i> <sup>1</sup>
{	speke	spak	spoken
	<i>speke</i>	<i>spak(c), spack(c)</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>spoken</i>
{	stele	stal	
	<i>stele</i>	<i>stalc</i>	<i>stolen</i>
{	tere <sup>3</sup>	totar	totoren, tōrn
		<i>tarc</i> <sup>4</sup>	

**148.** *Speke* belongs properly to Class V, but has been drawn over entirely, as *gete*, *trade*, *wroke* and *hydde* (*q. v.*) have been drawn over partially, by the analogy of Class IV.

## CLASS V.

<b>149.</b>	O. E.	e	æ	ǣ	e
	<i>Chaucer</i>	ē (i)	a, ę (ē, ē̄)	ē, ē̄	ē̄ (i)
{	ete	eet		eten	
	<i>ete</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>etc</i>		<i>etc(n)</i> <sup>6</sup>	
{	gete	gat		geten	
	<i>gete</i>	<i>gat(c), gatte</i> <sup>7</sup>		<i>geten, yeten</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>goten</i>	

<sup>1</sup> *benome*, 647.13, 653.4, 674.23.

<sup>2</sup> *spack*, 20.23 (Caxton's Rubric); *spacke*, 161.10, 530.25.

<sup>3</sup> *Were* ('wear') *-ware* appears as a full strong verb of this class. In *Ch.* it is still weak, except for a pret. pl. "weren."

<sup>4</sup> 579.8.

<sup>5</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.

<sup>6</sup> ptc. *etc*, 652.21.

<sup>7</sup> *gatte*, 297.37, 480.30.

<sup>8</sup> *geten*, 132.32; *yeten* (*for-yeten*), 840.34.

{	<i>stykke</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>stak(e)</i> , <i>stack</i> <sup>2</sup>	
{	<i>trede</i>	<i>trad</i>	<i>treden</i> , <i>trōden</i>
{		<i>trade</i> <sup>3</sup>	
{	<i>wreke</i>		<i>wreken</i> , <i>wroken</i>
{	( <i>wreke</i> )	[ <i>wrekyd</i> <sup>4</sup> ]	<i>wroke(n)</i> <sup>5</sup>
{	<i>yive</i>	<i>yaf</i>	<i>yiven</i>
{	<i>yeue</i> , <i>geue</i> , <i>gyue</i>	<i>yaf</i> , <i>gaf(e)</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>gyuen</i> , <i>geuen</i>

(a) O. E. *sēon* is for an older *seh(w)on*. Hence pret. *seah*, ptc. *sewen*.

{	<i>see</i>	<i>saugh</i> , <i>seih</i> , <i>saygh</i> , <i>sy</i>	<i>seyen</i> , <i>seene</i>
{	<i>see</i>	<i>saw(e)</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>sene</i>

(b) The following had originally a *j* in the present (Goth. *bidjan*).

{	<i>bidde</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>beden</i>
{	<i>bydde</i>	<i>bad</i> <sup>8</sup>	
{	<i>lye</i> , <i>ligge</i>	<i>lay</i>	<i>leyen</i>
{	<i>lye</i> , <i>lygge</i>	<i>lay(e)</i>	<i>lyne</i> , <i>layne</i> <sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Stykke* is from O. E. *stician* (weak). The strong verb *stecan* does not appear in O. E., though its existence is plainly indicated (*Skcat*, *Dict.*). Nor does *Ch.* use the strong verb *steken*, which appears elsewhere in M. E. See *Stratmann*.

<sup>2</sup> *stak*, 248.32, 33; *stack*, 40.23, 69.29. Cf. *speke* under IV.

<sup>3</sup> *trade*, 778.13, 784.10.

<sup>4</sup> *wrekyd*, 229.32.

<sup>5</sup> *wroken*, 107.5; *awroke*, 47.9. *Wroken*, like Chaucer's *trōden*, is due to the analogy of Class IV. Cf. § 148.

<sup>6</sup> *gaf* and *gafe* are about equally common.

<sup>7</sup> A pret. *see* seems to occur at 59.8, but the case is doubtful.

<sup>8</sup> A ptc. *boden*, after the analogy of Class IV, occurs at 730.8.

<sup>9</sup> A ptc. *lyen* occurs at 35.12. W. has only *lyne(e)*. With *lyne* cf. *borne* (IV) and *sene* (V, a). Chaucer has "seene," adj.

{ sitte	sat, seet	seten
{ sytte	sat(e), <sup>1</sup> satte	syttē

## CLASS VI.

<b>150.</b> O. E.	a	ō	ō	a
<i>Chaucer</i>	ā, a, ę, (ē, ȝ)	ō	ō	ā, a, ę (ȝ)
{ bake				baken
{ ( <i>bake</i> ) <sup>2</sup>				<i>bake(n)</i>
{ drawe	drow			drawen
{ <i>drawe</i>	<i>drewe</i>			<i>drawe(n)</i> <sup>3</sup>
{ fare	[fared]			faren
{ <i>fare</i>	[ <i>fared</i> ]			<i>faren</i> <sup>4</sup>
{ forsake	forsook			forsaken
{ <i>forsake</i>	<i>forsoke</i>			<i>forsaken</i>
{ grave				graven
{ ( <i>graue</i> )				<i>grauen</i>
{ heve	haf			
{ <i>heue</i>	<i>heue</i> <sup>5</sup>			
{ laughe	lough			laughen
{ <i>laugh(e)</i>	<i>lough</i> , [ <i>laughed</i> ] <sup>6</sup>			
{ shake	shook			shaken
{ <i>shake</i>	<i>shoke</i>			

<sup>1</sup> *sate*, 244.34.<sup>2</sup> The forms from the *Morte d'Arthur* are printed in Italics.<sup>3</sup> *drawe* occurs once, 106.30.<sup>4</sup> *farne*, adj., 595.9.<sup>5</sup> *heue* occurs at 847.18, where it is a plural. Römstedt (p. 44, VI, 1) cites *heef* (Reynard, 95.37, 96.8), and explains it as formed after the analogy of the reduplicating class.<sup>6</sup> *lough*, 45.29; *laughed*, 367.37.

{ shape	shoop	shapen
{ <i>shape</i>	<i>shope</i>	<i>shapen</i>
{ slee	slough, slow	slawen, slayn
{ <i>slee</i>	<i>slough, slewe</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>slayn(e)</i> <sup>2</sup>
{ stonde,	stood	stonden
{ <i>stand(e)</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>stood(e)</i> , <sup>4</sup> <i>stode</i>	( <i>with</i> ) <i>stond(e)</i> , ( <i>under</i> ) <i>stand(e)</i> <sup>5</sup>
{ swere	swoor	sworen, sworn
{ <i>swere</i>	<i>sware</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>sworn(e)</i>
{ take	took	taken
{ <i>take</i>	<i>took(e)</i> , <i>toke</i>	<i>take(n)</i> <sup>7</sup>
{ wake	wook	waken
{ ( <i>a</i> ) <i>wake</i>	<i>wok(e)</i> , <i>wake</i>	
{ wasshe	wessh	wasshen
{ <i>wasshe</i>	<i>wesshe</i> , <sup>8</sup> <i>wasshe</i> , [ <i>wasshed</i> ] <sup>9</sup>	<i>wasshen</i>
{ waxe, wexe	weex, wex, wax	waxen, woxen
{ <i>waxe</i>	[ <i>waxt(e)</i> ] <sup>10</sup> [ <i>waxed</i> ]	<i>waxen</i>

<sup>1</sup> *slough*, 165.31; *slewe*, 113.30. Römstedt cites one case of pret. *slewe* (Reynard, 34.33).

<sup>2</sup> The ptc. *flayne* (flayed) occurs at 74.25; and the ptc. *lade* at 196.29. See *Stratmann*, flean, (h)laden.

<sup>3</sup> W. vndyrstond. <sup>4</sup> *stode*, 801.7. <sup>5</sup> *understanden*, 166.30.

<sup>6</sup> *swere* follows the analogy of Class IV (Römstedt, p. 44, VI, 2). Cf. *tere*.

<sup>7</sup> W. also the contract 'tane.'

<sup>8</sup> *wesshe* is due to the analogy of the reduplicating verbs.

<sup>9</sup> *wasshe* occurs at 550.19; *wasshed*, at 380.11.

<sup>10</sup> Römstedt cites pret. *wexe* (Reynard, 18.13) and *waxe* (Reynard, 17.14). The former he attributes to the analogy of the reduplicating verbs; the latter, to that of Class IV. (Römstedt, p. 44, VI, 1 and 2.) *waxt* occurs at 130.31; *waxte*, at 463.23. *waxed* (856.26) is common also in Chaucer. W. has *waxyd*.

**151.** Römstedt (p. 44, VI, 1) attributes the *-ew-* in *drewe* and *shewe* to the analogy of the reduplicating verbs. Wiclif has both “slooȝ” and “sleu.” “Sleu” occurs in the Romance of Sir Triamor (1430, according to Stratmann, *q. v.*).

## SUMMARY OF CHANGES IN THE ABLAUT SERIES.

**152.** The preterit plural is entirely assimilated to the preterit singular. The process of assimilation, already far advanced in Chaucer, was hastened by the rapid loss of the plural sign. The sporadic cases in which the old distinction seems to be maintained are misleading. Thus the preterit plural *spoken* (700.26) is due to mere confusion with the participle. Chaucer has “speken.” *Sware* appears always to be singular, and *swore* always plural; but *sware* is a new preterit, formed after the analogy of Class IV. Chaucer has “swoor,” pl. “swooren.” The preterit *holpe* occurs only in the plural, the singular being always *halp* (or *helpe*). But *holpe* occurs only once: *these other knyghtes — holpe for to synge masse*, 856.20. Until some one discovers a singular *holpe* or a plural *halp*, this may stand as a solitary survival.<sup>1</sup>

**153.** Besides the verbs which since Chaucer's time have gone over entirely to the weak conjugation (*crepe*, *lepe*, *lete*, *sheete*, *slepe*, *weepe*), the following show double forms in the preterit: *cleue* (*clafe*, *clefte*), *breste* (*brast*, *brest*), *growe* (*grew*, *grewed*), *hewe* (*hewe*, *hewed*), *laughe* (*lough*, *laughed*), *synke* (*sanke*, *synked*), *yelde* (*yolde*, *yelded*). *Ryue* has ptc. *ryuen* and *ryued*.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's Rubric seems also to have a single case: *trystram & Isoude dronken the loue drynke*, 15.35.

**154.** *Fare* (*fared*, *faren*), *waxe* (*waxed*, *waxen*), and *wreke* (*wreckyd*, *wroken*) show a weak preterit and a strong participle.

**155.** The confusion between the strong *sytte* and the weak *sette* appears already: *every knyzt sette in his own place*, 620.2; *the knyght sat syr Beaumayns afore the damoisel*, 220.2.

**156.** The counter-movement from weak to strong appears in the preterit *ware* and the participle *aryuen* (700.22), a rare variant for *aryued* (O. F. *arriver*).<sup>1</sup>

**157.** The confusion between preterit singular and preterit plural accounts for the double forms *bond* (*bounde*), *fond* (*founde*), *woke* (*wake*), *wesshe* (*wasshe*).

**158.** Final *-e* seems to be used with some consistency in the preterit after a single consonant to mark a preceding vowel as long. Thus in Class I, Chaucer's *droof*, *roos*, *shoon*, etc., appear as *drofe*, *rose*, *shone*, etc. In Class VI, Chaucer's *forsook*, *shook*, *shoop*, etc., appear as *forsoke*, *shoke*, *shope*, etc. But such forms as *droofe* (I) and *stoode* (VI) on the one hand, and *wok* (VI) on the other, show license and confusion in the application of *-e*.

(a) In Class IV, Chaucer's preterits *bar*, *brak*, *cam*, *spak*, are short. Modern usage pronounces them long, and the *Morte d'Arthur* has *bare*, *brake*, *came*, *spake*. These forms may indicate a transition of pronunciation, the rare forms *brack* and *spack* preserving the older sound. But here again the license suggested by the parallel forms *brak* and *brake*, *cam* and *came*, *spak* and *spake*, prevents any absolute conclusion. The form *gate*, moreover, in Class V, seems to make against the hypothesis.

<sup>1</sup> *Quoke*, cited by Römstedt (Reynard, 47.2, 56.20), shows that the strong preterit given to the weak verb "cwakien" in Chaucer's time, endured for a while. Chaucer has:

"For ire he *quook*, no lenger wolde he byde." — C. T., 1576.



**159.** Doubling of a consonant after a short vowel appears in the preterits *beganne*, *ranne*, *swalle*, *swamme*, *wanne* in Class III, *gatte*, *satte* in Class V.

**160.** Syncopated participles in *-ne* appear in *borne* (IV), *sene* (Chaucer, *seene*, adj.), *leyne* (V), *farnē*, *sworne* (VI).

**161.** ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG VERBS IN THE  
MORTE D'ARTHUR.

I.	<i>abyde</i>	<i>abode</i>	<i>abyden</i>
VI.	<i>(bake)</i>		<i>bake(n)</i>
III, 1.	<i>begynne</i> ,	<i>began</i> , <i>beganne</i>	<i>begonne</i>
IV.	<i>bere</i>	<i>bare</i> , <i>bere</i>	<i>boren</i> , <i>born(e)</i>
R.	<i>bete</i>	<i>bete</i>	<i>bete(n)</i>
R.	<i>blowe</i>	<i>blewe</i>	<i>blowen</i>
IV.	<i>breke</i>	<i>brak(e)</i>	<i>broke(n)</i>
III, 3.	<i>breste</i>	<i>braste</i> , <i>brest(e)</i>	
V, b.	<i>bydde</i>	<i>bad</i>	
III, 1.	<i>bynde</i>	<i>bond(e)</i> , <i>bound(e)</i>	<i>bonde(n)</i> , <i>bounde(n)</i>
I.	<i>byte</i>	<i>boot</i> , <i>bote</i>	
II.	<i>chese</i>	<i>chose</i>	<i>chosen</i>
II.	<i>cleue</i>	<i>claf(e)</i> , [ <i>clefte</i> ]	<i>clouen</i>
III, 1.	<i>clymbe</i>	<i>clamme</i>	
IV.	<i>come</i>	<i>cam(e)</i> , <i>come</i>	<i>come(n)</i>
VI.	<i>drauwe</i>	<i>drewe</i>	<i>drauwe(n)</i>
III, 1.	<i>drynke</i>	<i>drank(e)</i>	<i>dronken</i>
I.	<i>dryue</i>	<i>drofe</i> , <i>droof(e)</i>	
V.	<i>ete</i>	<i>ete</i>	<i>ete(n)</i>
R.	<i>fallē</i>	<i>felle</i> , <i>fylle</i> , <i>fyl</i>	<i>fallē(n)</i>
VI.	<i>fare</i>	[ <i>farēd</i> ]	<i>faren</i>
VI.			<i>flayne</i>
II.	<i>(flye)</i>	<i>flewe</i>	
III, 1.	<i>flynge</i>	<i>flang</i>	

VI.	<i>forsake</i>	<i>forsøke</i>	<i>forsaken</i>
III, 3.	<i>fyghte</i>	<i>faught(c)</i>	<i>foughten</i>
III, 1.	<i>fynd(c)</i>	<i>fond(c), found(c)</i>	{ <i>fonde(n), fond,</i> <i>founde(n)</i>
V.	<i>gete</i>	<i>gat(c), gatte</i>	<i>geten, yeten, goten</i>
VI.	( <i>grauc</i> )		<i>grauen</i>
R.	<i>growe</i>	<i>grewe [growed]</i>	<i>growen</i>
III, 1.	( <i>grynde</i> )		<i>groundyn</i>
R.	<i>hange</i>	<i>henge</i>	[ <i>hanged</i> ]
III, 2.	<i>helpe</i>	<i>halp(c), holpe, helpe</i>	<i>holpen</i>
VI.	<i>heue</i>	<i>heue</i>	
R.	<i>hewe</i>	<i>hewe, [hewed]</i>	<i>hewen</i>
R.	<i>hold(c)</i>	<i>held(c)</i>	<i>holde(n)</i>
R.	( <i>be</i> ) <i>hote</i>	[ <i>hyghte</i> ]	
III, 3.	<i>kerne</i>	<i>carfe, [kerued]</i>	
R.	<i>knowe</i>	<i>knewe</i>	<i>knowe(n)</i>
VI.			<i>lade</i>
VI.	<i>laugh(c)</i>	<i>lough, [laughed]</i>	
V, b.	<i>lye, lygge</i>	<i>lay(c)</i>	<i>leyn, layn, lyen</i>
R.	( <i>more</i> )		<i>moren</i>
IV.			( <i>be</i> ) <i>nome</i>
III, 1.	<i>renne</i>	<i>ran, ranne</i>	<i>ronne</i>
I.	<i>ryde</i>	<i>rod(c)</i>	<i>ryden</i>
III, 1.	<i>rynge</i>	<i>range</i>	
I.	<i>ryue</i>	<i>rafe, roof(c), rafe</i>	<i>ryuen, [ryued]</i>
I.	( <i>a</i> ) <i>ryse</i>	( <i>a</i> ) <i>roos, (a)rose</i>	( <i>a</i> ) <i>rysen</i>
V, a.	<i>see</i>	<i>saw(c)</i>	<i>sene</i>
II.	( <i>see</i> ) <i>the</i>		<i>soeden</i>
VI.	<i>shake</i>	<i>shoke</i>	
VI.	<i>shape</i>	<i>shope</i>	<i>shapen</i>
II.	<i>shoue</i>	<i>shecf, shoue</i>	<i>shouen</i>
I.	<i>shryue</i>	[ <i>shryued</i> ]	<i>shryuen</i>
I.	<i>shyne</i>	<i>shone</i>	

VI.	<i>slee</i>	<i>slough, slewe</i>	<i>slayn(e)</i>
I.		<i>slode</i>	
I.	<i>smyte</i>	<i>smote</i>	<i>smyte(n)</i>
IV.	<i>speke</i>	<i>spak(e), spack</i>	<i>spoken</i>
III, 1.			<i>spronge</i>
VI.	{ <i>stand(e)</i> }	<i>stood, stode</i>	<i>stand(e), stonde</i>
	{ <i>stond(e)</i> }		
IV.	<i>stele</i>	<i>stale</i>	<i>stolen</i>
I.	<i>(he)stryde</i>	<i>(be)strade</i>	
I.	<i>stryke</i>	<i>strake, stroke</i>	<i>stryken</i>
I.	<i>(stryue)</i>	<i>stroof</i>	
V.	<i>stykke</i>	<i>stake, stack</i>	
III, 1.	<i>stynge</i>	<i>stonge</i>	<i>stongen</i>
III, 2.		<i>swalle</i>	
VI.	<i>swere</i>	<i>sware, swore</i>	<i>sworn(e)</i>
III, 1.	<i>swymme</i>	<i>swamme</i>	
III, 1.	<i>(swyng(e))</i>	<i>swange</i>	
III, 1.	<i>synge</i>	<i>sange</i>	<i>songe</i>
III, 1.	<i>synke</i>	<i>sanke, [synked]</i>	
V, b.	<i>sytte</i>	<i>sat(e), satte</i>	<i>syttē</i>
VI.	<i>take</i>	<i>took(e), toke</i>	<i>taken</i>
IV.		<i>tare</i>	
R.	<i>throȝe</i>	<i>threȝe</i>	<i>throwen</i>
III, 1.	<i>(thryng(e))</i>	<i>thrang(e)</i>	
I.	<i>(thryue)</i>	<i>throfe</i>	
V.		<i>trade</i>	
VI.	<i>(a)wake</i>	<i>wok(e), wake</i>	
VI.	<i>wasshe</i>	{ <i>wesshe, wasshe,</i> }	<i>wasshen</i>
		{ <i>[wasshed]</i> }	
VI.	<i>(waxe)</i>	<i>[waxed], [waxte]</i>	<i>waxen</i>
IV.	<i>were</i>	<i>ware</i>	
V.	<i>(wreke)</i>	<i>[wrekyd]</i>	<i>wroke(n)</i>
III, 3.	<i>(wrest(e))</i>	<i>wrast</i>	
III, 1.	<i>wrynge</i>	<i>wrong, wrange</i>	

I.	<i>wryte</i>	<i>wrote</i>	<i>wryten</i>
I.	<i>wrythe</i>	<i>wrothe</i>	
III, 1.	<i>wynne</i>	<i>wan, wanne</i>	<i>wonne(n)</i>
III, 2.	<i>yelde</i>	{ <i>yolde, yelde,</i> [ <i>yelled</i> ]	<i>yolden, yelden,</i> [ <i>yelled</i> ]
V.	<i>yeue</i>	<i>yaf, gaf(c)</i>	<i>gyuen, geuen</i>

## THE WEAK VERB.

The classification is that of Sievers; but Sievers's Class III (415) is merged into Class I, as in Ten Brink (162 b).

## Class I.

**162.** Preterits in *-de*, *-te* often drop the *-e*, and participles in *-d*, *-t* often assume an *-e*.

(a) The full ending *-ede* has all but disappeared: *de-partede*, 716.5.

**163.** Double forms in the preterit persist for the verbs *drede* (*dred(de)*, *drad(de)*), *ledē* (*ledde*, *laddē*), *dwelle* (*dwelled*, *dwelt(e)*).

**164.** The Chaucerian participles *bleynt* (*blenche*), *spreynd* (*sprenge*), etc., have disappeared. *Drenche* makes *drenched*; but *sprenge* makes *sprent*.

**165.** The preterits from weak verbs without umlaut of the root-vowel persist, in the main, without variation: *thoughte*, *broughte*, *wroughte*, *soughte*, *raughte* (*roughte*), etc. But *stretche* makes pret. *stretched*, and *teld* occurs once, 575.18.

**166.** The pret. *send(e)*, 35.6, 172.26 (beside *sente*), and the pret. and ptc. *gyrd*, 76.17, 19, 637.27, 694.8 (beside *gyrte*), persist from O. E. (Sievers, 405.4).

## Class II.

**167.** The only important variation from the Chaucerian paradigms is the disappearance of the full ending *-ede* (§ 162 a).

(a) *Make* has only *made* (*maad(e)*) for pret. and ptc. The pret. *prighte* has given way to the regular *pryked*. *Bereue* makes pret. *berafte*, ptc. *berafte* and *bereued*, as in Chaucer.

**168.** An apparent syncope of the stem in the ptc. *crystned*, *fastned*, etc., may be due to the original form of the infinitive (see *Stratmann*, s. 171.).

## Verbs Derived from Other Germanic Languages.

**169.** *Sterte* makes pret. *sterte* and *starte* (Chaucer also *asterted*); *shryche*, *shryched* and *shryked* (Chaucer also *shrighte*) *dye* (*deye*), *dyed* and *ded*; *reyse*, *reysed*, as in Chaucer.

**170.** Pret. *fette* and ptc. *fet(tē)* (so Chaucer) are regularly formed from E. E. *fette(n)*, O. E. *fetian*. But the only present in use is *fitche* (E. E. *fecche(n)*, pret. *feighte*; O. E. *feccan*). The persistence of these forms may be due to O. N. *feta*.

**171.** The double preterit forms *threste* (*threstyd*) and *thryst* correspond respectively to E. E. *thraсте* (*thraesten*, O. E. *þræstan*) and E. E. *thrūste* (*thrusten*, O. N. *þrýsta*).

**172.** Pret. and ptc. *pyghte* (so Chaucer) are from E. E. *picche(n)*, M. Du. *picken*, O. N. *pikka*. The form is probably due to analogy.

## Verbs Derived from the French.

**173.** As in Chaucer, these verbs make regularly pret. *-ed(e)* (see § 167), ptc. *-ed*.

**174.** Barytone verbs in *-er* from F. verbs in *-rer* and *-rir* syncope the *e* of the preterit and participle :

<i>couer</i> (F. couvrir)	<i>couerd</i>	<i>couerd</i>
<i>delyuer</i> (F. délivrer)	<i>delyuerd</i>	<i>delyuerd</i>

(a) The preterits *entred*, *offred*, *suffred*, etc., are from the presents *entre*, *offre*, *suffre* (cf. § 168). But verbs in *-er*, both French and English, show variations which seem merely graphical. Thus *gadre* makes ptc. *gadered* and *gadred*; *couer* makes ptc. *couerd*; but *discouer* makes *discoueryd*; *suffre* (spelled also *suffer*) makes pret. *suffred*, ptc. *sufferd*, etc.

**175.** The preterits *caught*, *quyte*, *hurte* (so Chaucer), and also *coste* and *wallopt(e)*, are formed by analogy.

**176.** The participles *distracte*, *attaynte*, *discomfyte*, *accept*, mark the tendency to curtail Romance participles from verbs in *-t*, which went so far in Elizabethan English.

## INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT.

- 177.** *sing.* 1, *-e* (sometimes dropped).  
           2, *-est*,<sup>1</sup> *-yst*.<sup>2</sup>  
           3, *-eth*, *-yth*,<sup>2</sup> *-es* <sup>3</sup> (*-ys*), *-ed*.<sup>4</sup>  
*plur.* *-en*,<sup>5</sup> *-e* (sometimes dropped).

<sup>1</sup> Römstedt prints *-este*, but cites no instances.

<sup>2</sup> The variants *-yst* and *-yth* are rare. In Books VI and VII *-yst* occurs only three times, *-yth* only twice. W. has three cases of *-yst*, six of *-yth*. A variant *-ys* occurs at 201.3.

<sup>3</sup> Third sing. *-es* is very rare: *bytkenes*, 847.23; *werches*, 848.1. The only case of *-ys* is *repentys*, 836.38.

<sup>4</sup> Third sing. *-ed*: *caused*, 606.31; *longed*, 615.1, 642.5; *pleasyd*, 751.32; *used*, 771.19; *profered*, 652.29. Römstedt cites *Reynard*, 8.38; 83.21.

<sup>5</sup> Plural *-en*: 632, 24.25, 636.11, 643.22, 669.8, 771.4.10, 794.24, 797.3. Römstedt (p. 46) thinks that *-e* seems to be preferred after pronouns,

*Subjunctive*, -e (sometimes dropped) for all persons and both numbers.

*Infinitive*, -e (sometimes dropped).

*Imperative*, -e, -eth.

*Participle*, -yng(e).

**178.** Chaucer's contract forms for the third person ("rit," "fint," for "rideth," "findeth," etc.) have disappeared.

**179.** The plural -th seems to survive in the following: *wil ye al that loueth me speke with Merlyn*, 47.12; *ye knyghtes arraunt the whiche goth to seke*, etc., 629.9; *I praye you gyue to me al my ryghtes that longeth to a chrysten man*, 858.20; *al Icentyl men and Icentyl wymmyn that redeth this book*, 861.4. It will be observed that all these instances are in relative clauses.<sup>1</sup> For *men saith*, see § 73.

**180.** The plural *says*, 196.23, if it be not a misprint, shows the northern -s plural that occurs sporadically in Shakspeare (*Abbott*, 333).

**181.** The infinitive -n appears only in the anomalous and preterit-present verbs.<sup>2</sup>

**182.** The plural form of the imperative survives, but has lost its plural force:<sup>3</sup> *syrs cometh hyder* (plur.), 133.30; *holdeth me in your armes* (sing.), 702.16; *Madame — cometh on*, 572.14; *syr foloweth me*, 616.17.

-en after nouns. The ending is too rare in the *Morte d'Arthur* to warrant any generalization.

*Sayne*, 187.30, shows a syncope analogous to that seen in certain ptc. (see § 160).

<sup>1</sup> Römstedt cites plural -eth from *Reynard*, 4.21, 44.2, 68.19.

<sup>2</sup> Römstedt cites several instances from other verbs (p. 46). W. shows a few cases: "And sparyd nott onto *leyn*," 231.

<sup>3</sup> Römstedt (p. 46) cites seven cases of the plural imperative from the Book of Curtesye. In every case the subject is singular.

There are no cases in W.

**183.** Presents in *-ye* make a present participle in *-eng(e)*: *lyenge*, 243.15; *sayeng*, 244.37.<sup>1</sup>

**184.** The southern participial ending *-end*<sup>2</sup> appears in *dryuend*, 223.7.

**185.** The French participial ending *-ant* appears only in the adjectives *arraunt* and *recreaunt*.

## INFLECTION OF THE PRETERIT.

### A. STRONG VERBS.

**186.** The second person takes regularly the personal ending *-est* of the weak conjugation: *slewest*, 219.3; *camyst*, 220.32; *sawest*, 113.31; *stodest*, 697.16; *gauest*, 842.14.

(a) The apparent survival of the regular form for the second personal singular in a few cases such as *fond*, 192.35, proves to be merely the omission of the personal ending: *took*, 111.15; *slewe*, 220.33, 816.36; *cam*, 93.1. In all these cases the vowel is the same as that of the first and third persons (cf. § 152).

**187.** The plural ends regularly in *-e*, *-en* surviving sporadically: *withdrewen*, 459.20; *chosen*, 663.20; *token*, 672.33.

**188.** For *-en* of the preterit participle *-yn* appears as a rare variant: *comyn*, 35.9; *holdyn*, 44.22; *betyn*, 228.3; *groundyn*, 807.18. The verb *wryte* makes a participle *wryton* at 850.35 and 851.22.<sup>3</sup>

**189.** The *-n* of the participle is often dropped, as in Chaucer (see Römstedt, p. 47).

<sup>1</sup> Römstedt, pp. 45, 46. This is doubtless a mere printer's device to avoid forms like *lyynge*.

<sup>2</sup> Römstedt cites *connynd* from the Book of Curtesye.

<sup>3</sup> Römstedt (p. 47) cites ptc. *wreton* (Reynard).



## B. WEAK VERBS.

**190.** It seems impossible to establish any rule for the occurrence of the *-yd* (*-id*) variant in preterit and participle; but it may be worth noting that:

(a) it seems to be somewhat more common in French verbs.

(b) it seems to occur most commonly in stems ending in a liquid (*l, n, r*): *relyd, knelyd, callid, fætryd, scateryd, feryd, sporyd, angryd, discouryd*, or a sibilant (*s, ç, sh, soft g*): *racyd, pleasyd, pressyd, dressid, lasshyd, rasshyd, auengyd*.

(c) it occurs also after the dental *t*: *repentyd*, 245.27, and after *k*: *wrekyd*, 229.32.

(d) a collation of all the weak preterits in Books VI and VII shows that between seven and eight per cent. end in *-yd* (*-id*). This may be taken as a fair average.

**191.** The ending of the second person singular sometimes omits the *-d*: *gaynest*, 219.1; *kyllest*, 219.3; *soupest*, 219.13; *lokest*, 228.30.

**192.** The plural *-en* occurs a few times: *metten* (Caxton's Preface), *sayden*, 40.25, 202.10.

**193.** The preterit subjunctive, in both strong and weak verbs, has *-e* (often dropped) for all persons and both numbers.

**194.** The prefix *y-* of the participle is rare: *y fonde*, 699.35; *y hurte*, 744.18; *y sought*, 754.1; *y barred*, 780.27; *y sette*, 822.32. It is always printed separately.

## CONTRACT FORMS.

**195.** The contract forms with *ne* survive here and there in the case of anomalous verbs: *nys*, 39.28; *nyst*, 190.22; *nyll*, 81.28; *nylt*, 641.17; *nold*, 705.31; but *ne was*, 703.10.

**196.** The contract forms of the infinitive with *to* are rare: *temprunte* (Caxton's Preface, 1.34); *texercyse* (*ibid.* 4.1); *tespye*, 171.17; *taccomplysshe*, 177.9.

**197.** The contract forms with *thou* (Chaucer's shaltow, etc.) have disappeared.

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

<b>198. Present.</b>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Infin. bee(n)	<i>be(n)</i> <sup>1</sup>		
Ind. am	<i>am</i>	was	<i>was</i>
art	<i>art(e)</i>	were	<i>were</i> <sup>3</sup>
is	<i>is (nys)</i>	was	<i>was</i>
bee(n), (arn)	<i>be(n), ar(e)</i>	were(n)	<i>were</i> <sup>4</sup>
Subj. be	<i>be</i>	were	<i>were</i> <sup>5</sup>
bee(n)	<i>been</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>be</i>	were(n)	<i>were</i> <sup>5</sup>
Partc. being	<i>beyng</i>	bee(n)	<i>be(n), by(n)</i> <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The left-hand columns are the Chaucerian paradigms; the right-hand (in italics), the paradigms from the *Morte d'Arthur*.

<sup>2</sup> W. bene.

<sup>3</sup> *Was* occurs once for the 2 sing. and once for the plural: *thou was the man*, 300.15; *ye was lykely*, etc., 300.33.

<sup>4</sup> Römstedt, *weere* (*weren, wheren*).

<sup>5</sup> Römstedt cites two instances of *ware*, one sing., the other plur.

<sup>6</sup> Ptc. *byn* is rare.

199. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Infin.	doo(n) <i>doo, done</i> <sup>1</sup>		
Ind.	doo <i>doo</i>	dide, etc.	<i>dyde, etc.</i>
	doost <i>doest, dost</i> <sup>2</sup>		
	dooth <i>doth</i>		
	<u>don</u> <u><i>doo, done</i></u> <sup>3</sup>		
Subj.	<u>doo</u> <u><i>doo</i></u>		
	doon <i>doo</i>		
Partc.	doing <i>doynge</i>	doon <i>done, doon, doo</i> <sup>4</sup>	
200. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Ind.	wil, wol { <i>wyl, wylle,</i>	wold, etc.	<i>wold(e), etc.</i>
	{ <i>wille, wil,</i>		
	{ <i>wol</i> <sup>5</sup>		
	wilt, wolt <i>wylt, wolt</i>		
	<u>wil, wol</u> <u><i>wylle, wyl</i></u>		
	wiln, wqln { <i>will(e),</i>		
	{ <i>wyll(e)</i>		
	<u>wil, wql</u> <u><i>wyl, woll</i></u> <sup>6</sup>		

<sup>1</sup> Infin. *done* occurs once, 444.33, with *doo* in the next line: *consyderyng the grete dedes of armes I haue sene you done shamefully and vnknyghtely I haue requyred you to doo bataille.*

<sup>2</sup> Römstedt, *doost*.

<sup>3</sup> Plur. *done*, 509.5.

<sup>4</sup> Ptc. *mysdoo*, 686.22.

<sup>5</sup> *wol* is rare, 59.8.

<sup>6</sup> *woll* (2d person, plur.), 42.22.

## PRETERIT-PRESENT VERBS.

<b>201.</b> <i>Present.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Infinitive	conne(n) <i>conne</i> <sup>1</sup>		
Ind.	can <i>can, canne</i>	} <i>couthe, coud(c)</i> <sup>4</sup>	
	canst <i>canst</i> <sup>2</sup>		
	can <i>can</i>		
	<hr/> conne(n), (can) <i>can, con</i> <sup>3</sup>		
<b>202.</b> <i>Present.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Ind.	dar <i>dare</i> <sup>5</sup>	dorste	<i>durst(c)</i>
	darst <i>darst(c)</i> <sup>6</sup>		
	dar <i>dar(c)</i>		
	<hr/> dor, (dar) <i>dar(c)</i>		
<b>203.</b> <i>Present.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>	
Infinitive	<i>mowe</i> <sup>7</sup>		
Ind.	may <i>may(e)</i>	} <i>myght(c)</i>	
	might { <i>mayst(c)</i> ,		
	(mayst) { <i>maist</i> <sup>8</sup>		
	may <i>may(c)</i>		
	<hr/> mowe(n), } <i>may(e)</i> <sup>9</sup>		
	mow, (may) }		

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive *conne* occurs twice, 176.34 (the passage shows plain reminiscences of the language of some older text), 820.22. <sup>2</sup> Römstedt, *canste*.

<sup>3</sup> Plur. *con* occurs at 269.22. Römstedt, *conne*.

<sup>4</sup> W. cowde.

<sup>5</sup> Römstedt cites an infinitive *dore* (Reynard, 72.25).

<sup>6</sup> A 2 sing. *durst* seems to occur at 192.31: *here are adventures nere hand, and thou durst preue hem*. It may, however, be a preterit.

<sup>7</sup> Infinitive *mowe* occurs at 122.26. Römstedt cites Reynard, 4.10; Blanchardyn, 14.8.

<sup>8</sup> *maxste*, 131.14, is doubtless a misprint.

<sup>9</sup> The subjunctive is *maye*. Römstedt cites three cases of subjunctive *mowe* from Blanchardyn.

204. <i>Present.</i>			<i>Preterit.</i>	
Ind.	moot	<i>mote</i> <sup>1</sup>	moste	<i>muste</i>
	moost			
	moot			
	<hr/>			
	moote(n), moot			

Subj. moote *mote*<sup>1</sup>

205. <i>Present.</i>			<i>Preterit.</i>	
Ind.	shal	<i>shal, shall(e)</i>	sholde	<i>shold</i> <sup>3</sup>
	shalt	<i>shalt</i>		
	shal	<i>shal, shall(e)</i>		
	<hr/>			
shullen, shuln, {	<i>shal,</i>			
shul, (shal) {	<i>shall(e)</i> <sup>2</sup>			

206. <i>Present.</i>			<i>Preterit.</i>	
Infin.	wite(n)	<i>wete</i>		
Ind.	wqqt	<i>wote</i>	wiste	<i>wist(e), wyst(e)</i>
	wqqt	{ <i>wotest</i> , <sup>4</sup>		
	wqqt	{ <i>wettest</i>		
	wqqt	<i>wote</i>		
	<hr/>			
	witen (wqqt)	<i>wete, wote</i>		
Subj.	wite	<i>wete</i>		
Imper.	wite	<i>wete, wyt(e)</i> <sup>5</sup>		

<sup>1</sup> *mote* occurs twice: once in the indicative, 67.9; once in the subjunctive, 592.27. The preterit *muste* is used for all forms, preterit and present.

<sup>2</sup> Römstedt cites *shul, shulle*, from Reynard.

<sup>3</sup> Römstedt also *shulde, shoulde*.

<sup>4</sup> Römstedt *woot, wettest* occurs at 379.14.

<sup>5</sup> Römstedt also *wytte*.

207. <i>Present.</i>			<i>Preterit.</i>	
Ind.	owe	<i>owe</i>		oughte
	owest	<i>owest</i>		<i>oughte</i>
	oweth	<i>oweth</i>		

**208.** Anomalous and preterit-present verbs sometimes omit the personal ending of the second person singular, particularly when the pronoun *thou* follows the verb: *what wold thou do*, 510.4; *quene gueneuer shold thou neuer see*, 207.5; *worship may thou none lese by me yf thou mayst stande me thre strokes*, 283.4. Cf. also *thou shall not chese*, 198.21; *thou oughte of ryght to hate her*, 276.5.

(a) The omission appears twice in other verbs: *thou kepte*, 262.37; *what cast thou for to do*, 774.1.<sup>1</sup>

**209.** The tendency to uniformity appears in the discarding of distinctively plural forms, such as *conne*, *dor*, *mowe*, and *shulle*, and of syncopated forms such as *woost*.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

### Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences.

**210.** The present subjunctive stands regularly in the protasis of anticipatory and ideal<sup>2</sup> conditions:

(a) with *and*, *and yf*, etc.: *moche harme he wille doo and he lyue*, 92.35; *And yf that he trouble yow — I shalle be your rescowe*, 197.9; *and thou do, thou shalt repente it*, 224.26; *and he be suche a knyghte as ye make hym, he wylle not*, etc., 228.34; *I will with all my herte — and it please hym to take*,

<sup>1</sup> W. Sawe þou owte (aught), 254.

<sup>2</sup> The terminology for conditional sentences is taken from Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar, where "ideal condition" is thus explained: "The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied." The other terms are self-explaining.

etc., 232.23; *and there ryse warre — there wille many kynges hold with syr Launcelot*, 797.34; *and thou chauffe me ony more, I shal make stryke of thy heed*, 840.4.

(b) with *but*, *but yf*, etc.: *ye shalle neuer haue the better of your enemyes but yf your persone be there*, 39.16; *but yf thou telle me, thou shalt neuer escape*, 244.13; *hors ne harneys getest thou none — but yf thou wyne hem*, 222.11.

(c) double conditions: *whether it be soo or no*, 202.26; *whether that I be gentylman borne or none*, 230.1; *Tyde me deth betyde me lyf — he shall neuer escape*, 847.1.

(d) The preterit subjunctive appears in indirect discourse: *the book sayth — in no wyse he wold medle with the quene and sir Launcelot were in her company*, 773.6.

**211.** The place of the preterit subjunctive in anticipatory and ideal conditions is taken by periphrases with *might* and *shold*: *I maye not now but yf I shold be founde fals*, 112.18; *it were grete ioye vnto vs alle and hit myghte please the kynge to make her his quene*, 37.33; *he myghte not take it oute of her hande onles he sholde haue hurte her*, 82.26.

**212.** Even the present subjunctive is sometimes displaced by periphrases with *may* and *shall*: *and yf it may hadde me to wyne hym, thenne wille kynge Arthur be my good and gracious lord*, 80.15.<sup>1</sup>

**213.** The preterit subjunctive appears in both the protasis and the apodosis of unreal conditions: *and he were not my sone, I durst saye*, etc., 124.10; *yf ye were suche fyfty as ye be, ye were not abli*, etc., 167.15; *and ye were better than ye ar ye were wel bywarvd vpon hym*, 246.17; *yf*

<sup>1</sup> Periphrases with *will* and *wold* also occur, but with the sense of willingness proper to this auxiliary: *that wille I not onles that thou wilt yeue me the bracet*, 111.30; *and ye wold hold yow stille, I wille undertake*, etc., 581.21.

*launcelot were here thenne were we wel at ease*, 691.21; *yf we other wayes dyd, we were shamed for euer*, 774.19.

(a) Unreal conditions with *as* ('as if'): *he ran away as he were wood*, 199.6; *as though he were a lordes sone*, 214.21.<sup>1</sup>

(b) Protasis implied: *it were shame for me to see thre knyghtes on one*, 200.15; *that were lothe to doo*, 200.35; *to yelde vs unto hym it were no reson*, 200.37; *it were as good for you to hold you styll*, 223.1; *thou were better flee*, 228.33.

**214.** But except in the case of the verbs *be* and *haue* the subjunctive in the apodosis of unreal conditions is commonly supplanted by *shold* with the infinitive: *that ye shold haue founde and we myghte haue stered from one stede*, 138.13; *alle her knyghtes shold not lyghtely wyne me, and me lyst to fyghte*, 148.20.

### Subjunctive in Indefinite Relative Clauses.

**215.** A present subjunctive, corresponding to the present subjunctive of ideal condition, appears in indefinite relative clauses: *what auenture so befall me I wille not mete my lady to be in no icopardy*, 120.30; *what knyghtes somcuer they be I care not*, 221.4; *I take no force, but whether as hym lyst hym self* (i.e., 'whichever of the two he pleases'), 230.15; *what somcuer he be, he is comen of a noble blood*, 231.33; *where somcuer thou mete my lord*, 264.10; *what somcuer come of me*, 801.25.<sup>2</sup>

**216.** The place of the preterit subjunctive in such clauses is supplied by *shold* with the infinitive: *who shold saye soo now he shold be a lyar*, 618.19.

<sup>1</sup> The following instance is doubtful: *Allas it is shame — to see suche a ladde to matche suche a knyghte as the weede ouer grewe the corne*, 224.1; i.e., 'as if the weed should over-top,' though *grewe* may be indicative and *as* simply modal.

<sup>2</sup> W. Thowe wylt worke, yf þou hungyr welle,

What worke þat the *be* brought, 356.



**217.** Even the present subjunctive is sometimes supplanted by an auxiliary periphrasis, usually with *shall*, sometimes with *may*: *what aduventure shalle falle to me — I wille take*, 96.35; *Gryflet — is — ful desyrous in armes, and who may see hym lyue he shal preue a good knyghte*, 123.36.

**218.** On the other hand, the general relative clause, in which the reference is definite, takes the indicative: *who so bannyssheth my cosyn germayn shall bannysshe me*, 140.13; *who that trespasseth ageynst our ordre dothe not wel*, 656.27.

### Subjunctive in Temporal Clauses.

**219.** A present subjunctive, corresponding to the present subjunctive in anticipatory and ideal conditions, stands regularly in temporal clauses looking toward the future and involving the idea of condition, doubt or contingency: *bynde thy wounde or thy blec chaunge*, 176.32; *he must Iuste or he passe*, 96.18; *we shalle neuer departe tyl the one of vs be dede*, 195.6; *I shalle abyde tyl god send yow here ageyne*, 206.5; *neuer to reste tyl thou come to queene Gueneuer*, 211.6; *I truste to god to serue hym or he departe*, 220.35; *ye thre shalle departe — tyl the aduventure brynge yow to the mayned kyng*, 706.19.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The preterit subjunctive in parallel cases is rare: *syre Ector wold not away til Gawayne were holt*, 690.7.

(b) The indicative is very rare: *I wille go vnto my bedde and neuer aryse vntyl I am dede*, 151.19 (where Pelleas thinks of his death as beyond contingency).

**220.** The preterit subjunctive sometimes appears in temporal clauses dependent on unreal conditions or parallel constructions: *I shold make sir Mellyagraunce herte ful cold*

<sup>1</sup> W. Tyll myne husbond *come* and se, 188; For þou schalt worke or euer þou goo, 344.

*or euer I departed, 780.3; I had leuer than to be lord of al crystendome that I had sure armour vpon me, that men myghte speke of my dedes or euer I were slayne, 801.37.*

**221.** Temporal clauses referring to what is past and actual,<sup>1</sup> take the indicative: *he rode cryt dayes or he met with auenture, 94.22.*

### Subjunctive in Final Clauses.

**222.** The present subjunctive occurs rarely in final clauses after a present tense: *It is now your parte to holde with the quene that she be not slayne, 806.9.*

(a) A corresponding preterit subjunctive occurs rarely after a past tense: *shold not he doo grete foly that wold lete these two flowres perysshe for to socoure the rotten tre that hit felle not, 674.28.*

**223.** The preterit subjunctive also occurs in final clauses after a present tense: *hyhe ('hie') the fast that thou were gone, 827.16; helpe me that I were on my hors, 746.7; helpe me vp that I were there, 746.13.<sup>2</sup>*

**224.** But final clauses usually employ auxiliary periphrases.

(a) with *may* and *myghte*: *ayde me that I maye be crystned, 177.6; I weylle that my moder be sente for that I may*

<sup>1</sup> Kellner (*Outlines*, p. 241) fails to make this distinction in discussing temporal clauses. Thus the indicative in the following instances cited by him is the regular English construction where a *past fact* is referred to without any idea of contingency: "Bifore þat 3ho wiþþ childe *was*." *Orm*, 6484. "Seynt Poul him self was there a phisicien before he *was* converted." *Maundeuille*, p. 123. These instances are not parallel with the next citation: "Pause, ere thou *rejectest*." *Byron, Manfred*, II, 1, which looks to the future, and indicates the decay of the subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> W. Nowe *helpe þis lyne were dyght*, 465. For the subjunctive in complementary final clauses see § 232.

speke *with her*, 67.18; *it is best ye suffre tyll another tyme that we may haue hym out of the courte*, 104.12; *made hem clone of her lyf that her prayer myghte be the more acceptable*, 40.15; *I dyd so that I myghte haue a syghte of her*, 149.7.<sup>1</sup>

(b) more commonly with *shold*: *I suppose we were sente for that I shold be dishonoured*, 35.15; *to thende that his enemyes shold not escape*, 172.35; *for this cause he bare the reed sleue that none yf (sic, i. e., of) his blood shold knowe hym*, 751.22; *putte vpon hit a gloue that it shold not be aspyed*, 782.3.<sup>2</sup> In the following, *myghte* and *sholde* occur side by side: *I did it to this entent that it sholde better thy courage, and that ye myght see and knowe her falshede*, 95.29.

### Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses.

**225.** The present subjunctive appears very rarely in consecutive clauses looking to the future: (Be) *not soo hardy — that thou slee hym*, 224.15; (Be) *not soo hardy — but thou saue hym*, 227.15; *and therto make a pomel of precyous stones that it be soo subtylly made that no man perceyue it*, 697.33.

**226.** Consecutive clauses regularly take the indicative: *he ransaked the thre woundes that they bled a lytyl*, 794.37; *he shalle do you remedy that youre herte shal be pleasyd*, 36.13.<sup>3</sup>

### Subjunctive in Concessive Clauses.

**227.** The present subjunctive stands regularly in concessive clauses: *though that I be so pourely clothed — me*

<sup>1</sup> For irregular tense-sequence in final clauses with *may* and *myghte* see § 261, c.

<sup>2</sup> *Wold* occurs after *lest*: *he dressid hym theus ward, leste folke wold say he had slayne them*, 96.1.

<sup>3</sup> The subjunctive in the following consecutive clause is conditional: *he rored and romed so hydously that it were merueill to here*, 165.13. See § 213, b.

*semeth I am fully assured*, 77.27; *paraurentur though he hate yow he hath somme*, etc., 140.35; *be a knyȝt neuer so good — they wille make hym a stark coward*, 143.19; *though this knyght be neuer soo fals I wyl neuer slee hym slepyng*, 151.4; *though theyr message please me not — yet I must remembre myn honour*, 161.6; *I wille not flee, though thou be aferd of hym*, 265.29; *be he neuer so strong, here he may be preued*, 577.16; *though he seke me, he shall not fynde me*, 590.16.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The indicative is rare: *thouȝ ye ar neuer so good a knyȝt as ye wote wel ye ar — yet shold ye be aduysed*, 783.15.

### Subjunctive in Indirect Question.

**228.** The preterit subjunctive occurs sometimes in indirect questions: *asked Merlyn what counceill were best*, 39.27; *But in no wyse I wold that he wist what I were, but that I were another straunge lady*, 245.16; *wolde to god that I wyste where were that traytour*, 846.25.

**229.** But the indicative is the regular construction: *we wote not who is he*, 571.12; *the kyng lete serche how moche people — there was slayne*, 123.7; *he asked hir — whos was the child*, 38.10; *we thouȝt to preue whiche of ȝs bothe was better knyȝt*, 105.29.

### Subjunctive in Substantive Clauses.

**230.** The subjunctive appears in clauses of apposition used to make up a periphrasis that has the force of a conditional particle: *so be hit that thou be not he*, 194.18; *he shal haue his lyf ȝpon this couenant that he goo*, etc., 240.26; *I wil wel, with this* (i. e., on this condition, that) *he make her amendys*, 240.28.

<sup>1</sup> W. Much hungry yt schall be thyne  
Though þou make much mone, 380.

**231.** The present subjunctive appears in explanatory clauses of apposition expressing a contemplated action, after "it is best" and similar phrases: *it is best that we brynge you to somme towne*, 847.33; *it is better ye doo not*, 69.21; *it wylle be best ye hold yow styll*, 803.19; *it is more youre worship that ye rescowe the quene*, 806.26.

(a) The preterit subjunctive in parallel cases is rare, its place being usurped commonly by *shold* with the infinitive (§ 289): *it were wel done sayd the heremyte that ye made you redy*, 856.35; *it were pyte ye lyued any longer*, 684.5.<sup>1</sup>

**232.** The subjunctive stands regularly in "complementary final clauses" <sup>2</sup> after expressions of wish, request, charge, command, etc.

1. present subjunctive.

(a) after *praye* and *hyseche*: *I praye to god that he send yow honour and worship*, 145.19; *pray hym that he be of good herte*, 234.16; *praye ye to the hyghe fader that he hold me in his scruyse*, 709.31; *I hyseche the — that my symple worship and honeste be saued*, 794.32.

(b) after *wylle*: *I wyl that syre Constantyn be myn heyr*, 164.26; *I wyl that thou make the redy*, 175.29; *I wyl that thou wete and knowe*, 195.2 ('I wish you to understand').

(c) after *councille*, *charge*, *commande*: *I counceille yow that we departe*, 35.16; *this is my counceil that our kyng — sende, etc.*, 47.34; *I charge the — that thou neuer destresse no knyghtes*, 134.20; *charge hym that he be redy*, 255.20; *I commande — that ye kepe yow within*, 40.28; *I commande the that thou forsake my companye*, 854.20.

(d) after *bydde*, etc.: *byd hym — that he clayme þe crowne*, 39.37; *bad hem sytte styll that none of hem remeue*, 104.19; *my lord — sendeth the word that thou araye the*, 649.30.

<sup>1</sup> W. That I hadde somewhat for to ete —

Me thynketh yt were ryght, 235.

<sup>2</sup> The term is borrowed from Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.

(e) after *loke*, *wayte*, *beware*: *loke ye al Barons be biforn kynges Vther to morne*, 39.29; *loke that the thre knyghtes haue al whyte sheldes*, 190.34; *wayte ye make not many questions*, 37.9; *awayte ye be redy*, 188.12; *beware ye be not defoyled*, 77.1.<sup>1</sup>

2. preterit subjunctive, after *wold*: *I wold he receyued it*, 199.30 ('I should like to have him receive it'); *she wold not it were knowen*, 136.26 ('she did not wish it to be known'); *I wold haue ye were hens*, 229.13 ('I should like to get you away from here'); *I wold fayne ye sawe her*, 241.31; *what woldest thou that I dyd*, 647.15; *I wold that ye lefte alle this*, 797.30.

(a) Except after *wold*, the preterit subjunctive in this construction is almost entirely supplanted by *shold* with the infinitive (§ 291, b). In the following the two stand side by side: *the kyng charged that he shold gyue hym — of the best, and also that he hadde at maner of fyndynge*, 214.19.

**233.** The preterit subjunctive is used in object clauses after *wold*, to express an extravagant or unattainable wish. The construction is parallel with that of unreal conditions (§ 213): *Ihesu wold that the lady of the castel perillous were so fayre*, 246.5; *god wold — that they were all thre here*, 715.15.

**234.** The present subjunctive is used to express doubt or uncertainty in object clauses after verbs of thinking, supposing, etc.: *I trowe it be not ye that hath slayne my husband*, 205.17; *they wene that he be some man of worship*, 221.36.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For the infinitive with *will*, less commonly with *shall*, in parallel cases see §§ 291 c, 303. Cf. also *Abbott*, 311, p. 220, and 369, p. 269.

<sup>2</sup> W. I trowe þat he be schent, 258. Walker cites from Sidney's *Arcadia*: "And I think there she do dwell" (*Abbott*, foot-note to p. 267).

The preterit subjunctive in parallel cases is very rare, and may be due to the attraction of a preceding subjunctive: *and I vnderstode that she were not glad of my comynge*, etc., 237.18 (cf. *Abbott*, § 368, p. 267).

## Imperative Subjunctive.

**235.** The first person plural of the imperative is supplied by a hortatory subjunctive, which appears side by side with the periphrasis "let us," etc.: *Now leue we of these knyghtes, and lete vs speke of the grete aray*, 257.11; *ryde we hens*, 95.11; *matche we to gyders*, 106.19.<sup>1</sup>

**236.** The third person of the imperative is expressed by the subjunctive: *we worth this sword*, 132.31; *he that alle the world weldeth gyue the short lyf and shameful dethe*, 168.1; *blame haue she*, 348.29; *now forgyue it the god*, 667.35; *neuer none be soo hardy*, 694.9; *he haue shame that wyll leue yow*, 828.38; *Falle of hit what falle may*, 797.32.<sup>2</sup>

## THE INFINITIVE.

Infinitive with and without *to*.

**237.** The simple infinitive (without *to*) persists after the auxiliaries, and after certain other verbs, of which the most common are *hyllde*, *here*, *lete*,<sup>3</sup> *see*.<sup>4</sup> But the use of *to* with

<sup>1</sup> W. *Pray we to Ihesu full of myght*, 650. The construction is common in Shakspeare: "do we so," *Merch. Ven.* II, 8.53.

"But *go we* in, I pray thee, Jessica,

And ceremoniously *let us prepare*," *ibid.* V, 1. 36.

<sup>2</sup> W. *god geue the care*, 463. For Shakspeare's use of this construction see *Abbott*, 364.

Similar is the familiar optative subjunctive in asseverations: W. *So god me saue*, 37; *so haue I hele*, 140; *so god me spede*, 210.

<sup>3</sup> And in one case *suffre*: *suffred* — *Segwarydes ryde after me*, 300.19. Kellner (p. lxiv, § 26) cites one instance after *suffre* and one after *ayde*.

<sup>4</sup> In one case even after the passive participle: *There were neuer knyghtes sene fyghte more fyersly*, 307.1.

The simple infinitive seems to be common after verbs of advising, but the cases are doubtful: *I rede you not folowe*, 244.5; *we adnyse you ryde not* (where *ryde* may be a subjunctive, or an imperative), 244.7; *I counceyllle the flee*, 222.34.

The following may be due to a printer's omission: *hit happed hym to leye hym doune slepe*, 338.28.

the infinitive has increased largely since Chaucer's time. Not only is it found regularly after verbs which in Chaucer's time were invariably followed by the simple infinitive, but in the majority of cases there is an evident wavering between the older habit and the new.<sup>1</sup> Thus *begynne* takes in almost every case the infinitive with *to*, but in one case the simple infinitive appears: *the two kynges sawe hem begyn waxe wrothe*, 50.21. On the other hand, even *hydde*, *haue*, *make*, *see*, verbs which in mod. E. are followed by the simple infinitive, sometimes take the infinitive with *to*: *ye shal hydde Launcelot du lake to make me knyght*, 216.26; *sought — for to haue hir to come oute*, 840.14; *yet had I leuer to dye*, 187.11; *and yf ye can make hym to abyde here*, 246.16; *to see suche a ladde to matche suche a knyghte*, 223.35.

*Ought* is followed by either construction: *wel oughte our lord be sygnefied to an herte*, 703.19; *it ought not to be done away*, 694.9.

### Infinitive with *for to*.

**238.** The infinitive with *for to* is used properly to express purpose: *I arose — for to helpe an old felawe*, 201.14.<sup>2</sup> But in the *Morte d'Arthur* it has a much wider scope:

(a) subject: *me ought for to doo*, 201.19.

(b) object: *they beganne for to stryue*, 186.11.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For the persistence of this wavering in Shakspeare, see *Abbott*, 349. W. has:

(a) the infinitive after "gan" five times with *to*, ten times without.

(b) the infinitive without *to* after "wyst": *I wyst my lord neuer do ryght noght*, 598 (mod. E. 'I never knew him do anything').

(c) the infinitive with *to*, and even with *for to*, after "bade":

And bade hem fast *for to weynde*,

Or ellys *to lett* be hys dede, 509.

<sup>2</sup> W. *Ther sche toke hym a bonde*

For to occupy hys honde, 226.

<sup>3</sup> W. *Lerne for to swete*, 225.



(c) apposition: *that is for to saye*, 212.22.

(d) complementary, with adjectives: *abel for to haue matched with vs*, 87.14.<sup>1</sup>

In short, the infinitive with *for to* is used commonly without differentiation from the infinitive with *to*. Sometimes the two occur side by side in the same construction: *ye shal promyse me* — for to go *with me* and to helpe *me*, 193.7; *it were fairer to take homage* — than for to slee *hym*, 240.16.

### Infinitive with Resumptive *to*.

**239.** Wherever an auxiliary is used with two infinitives, the latter infinitive, if it is separated from the former by intervening words, takes *to*. In such cases *to* seems to be regarded as a resumptive, to make the construction plain: *that lordes and ladyes myghte beholde and to gyue the pryse*, 191.8; *we wyl be felawes to gyders and neuer to fayle*, 194.21; *god wold that ye shold put hym from me, outhur to slee hym*, 221.28; *I shal be true to you and neuer te (misprint for to) bitraye you*, 242.21; *I—wille rescowe her or els to dye*, 237.23; *a leche fonde that he myght lyue, and to be hole within a moneth*, 690.5; *that ye may drawe oute the sowles of erthely payne, and to putte them into the Ioves of paradys*, 716.29; *she had leuer slee hyr self than to be maryed*, 840.16.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> W. wylling — a wyfe for to wedde, 25.

<sup>2</sup> This explains the Shaksperian habit noted by Abbott, § 350.

"Make thy two eyes like stars *start* from their spheres,  
Thy knotted and combined locks *to part*," *Hamlet*, I, 5.18.

"Who would be so mocked with glory, or *to live*  
But in a dream of friendship," *Timon*, IV, 2.33.

W. Thys wryght would wedde no wyfe,  
Butt yn yougeth *to lede* hys lyfe, 19.  
That no man schuld beseke her of grace,  
Nor her *to begyle*, 101.

### Infinitive as Subject.

**240.** The infinitive standing as logical subject with impersonal verbs is a familiar construction from the O. E. period down: *the behoueth now to chese one of vs four*, 187.5; *hym happend ageynst a nyghte to come to a fayr courtelage*, 200.2.

(a) Similar is the appositive construction with *it* as grammatical subject: *it were shame for me to see thre knyghtes on one*, 200.15; *to yelde vs vnto hym it were no reson*, 200.37; *it wyll be hard to matche hym*, 204.10.

**241.** But in the *Morte d'Arthur* an appositive infinitive may stand side by side with a noun clause in the same grammatical construction: *this is my counceill — that we lette puruey X knyghtes — & they to kepe this swerd*, 40.36 (i. e., and that they keep); *I wylle that ye gyue vnto your broder alle the hole manoir — vnder thys forme, that sir Ontzelake hold the manoir of yow, and yerely to gyue yow a palfrey*, 134.16 (i. e., and that he give you yearly).

(a) A similar construction appears sometimes in alternative sentences: *it is better that we slee a coward than thorow a coward alle we to be slayne*, 60.8.

**242.** Finally the appositive infinitive with subject expressed may stand alone as the full equivalent of a noun clause: *it is gods wyll youre body to be punysshed*, 67.10; *it is the customme of my Countrey a knyghte alweyes to kepe his wepen with hym*, 92.23; *I calle hit foly knyghtes to abyde when they be ouermatched*, 172.12; *dyd as nobly as was possyble a man to doo*, 173.18; *it were hard ony tonge to telle*, 859.38; *it semeth not* ('is not likely') *yow to spede there as other haue failled*, 77.34. Cf. *Abbott*, 354.

**243.** It appears at first sight as if the nouns in these infinitive phrases were datives, and hence as if this were

a familiar modern construction, except for the absence of the preposition (e. g., 'as nobly as was possible *for* a man to do'). But the following instances show that the accompanying case is nominative: *That were shame* — thou *an armed knyghte* to slee a naked man, 209.7; thou to loue (her) *that louth not the is but grete foly*, 237.17; *hit was neuer the custome in no place of worship that cuer I came in when a knyghte and a lady asked herborough* (and<sup>1</sup>) they to receyue *hem and after* to destroye them, 310.23.

**244.** That an older dative,<sup>2</sup> however, lies at the root of this construction is suggested by the fact that the construction is found almost invariably after impersonal verbs and verb-phrases. It may be conjectured, then:

(a) that the origin of this construction is the familiar construction of impersonal verbs with the dative, where the infinitive stands as logical subject (§ 80, d).

(b) that the anomalous form it took is due to the confusion resulting from the decay of the dative.

(c) that its extension to such sentences as those cited under §§ 241 and 241, a, is due to the analogy of the infinitive with resumptive *to*<sup>1</sup> (§ 239).

### Infinitive as Object.

**245.** The objective infinitive has, in general, much the same extent as in modern English. Thus it appears after verbs expressing hope, fear, intention, promise, and occasionally after other verbs of incomplete predication; after expressions of preference; and after several verbs taking

<sup>1</sup> Instances like the following may be mere anacolutha, or they may indicate an extension of the infinitive with resumptive *to*: *the reed knyghte with thre score knyghtes — dyde to syr Gareth homage and feaute and alle tho knyghtes to hold of hym for euermore*, 270.29.

<sup>2</sup> Not an accusative, as Kellner (p. lxx) seems to imply.

two objects, particularly *aske*, *praye* and *teche*. Modern English limits the construction to certain particular verbs. In the *Morte d'Arthur* there is more freedom: *I suppose to passe the mountayns*, 163.13.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The infinitive with *had leuer* is objective. Thus in *yet had I leuer to dye*, 187.12, the fundamental meaning seems to be 'I should hold (*had*, preterit subjunctive; see § 213, b) it preferable to die.'<sup>2</sup>

**246.** After verbs of hindering the thing hindered may be expressed by the infinitive: *to lette his owne fader to lande*, 841.10; *I maye not warne peple to speke of me what it pleaseth hem*, 198.2 (i. e., prevent people from speaking).<sup>3</sup>

**247.** The infinitive with an accompanying noun may stand as the full equivalent of an object clause (see § 242): *Alas — that euer I shold lyue to here* that moost noble kyng *that maad me knyght* thus to be ouersette, 852.14; *he sente you word that he trusteth — to be of as grete noblesse as euer were ye bothe* and mo men to speke of his noblesse *than euer they did yow*, 590.33 (i. e., that he will be — and — that more men will speak).<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> When he in to be seller felle,

He wente to haue sonke (weened he had sunk) in to helle, 451.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Fitz-Edward Hall in Amer. Jour. Phil., II, 281.

<sup>3</sup> "If nothing lets to make us happy both, *Twelfth Night*, V, 1, 256; "Metaphors far-fet hinder to be understood," Ben Jonson, *Discoveries*, 757 (Abbott, 355).

<sup>4</sup> "Be then desir'd —  
A little to disquantity your train,  
And the remainder that shall still depend  
To be such men that shall besort your age."  
— *Lear*, I, 4, 272.

"I have deserved  
All tongues to talk their bitterest."  
— W. T., III, 2, 217 (Abbott, 354).

**Gerundive Infinitive.**

**248.** Abbott (356, p. 257) gives the name "gerundive" to many infinitives standing in constructions where they have been supplanted in modern English by the verbal noun: *what daunger I had to brynge* (i. e., in bringing) *ageyne Quene Isoud*, 372.22; *aferd to be dede*, 693.16; *wayke and feble to goo*, 857.2; *ye are gretely to blame for to displese kyng Arthur*, 80.12; *And as for to say for to take my plesaunce with peramours, that wyll I refuse*, 198.6; *aboute to doo*, 136.19. For other instances see the foregoing sections, and *Kellner*, p. lxx, § 28, (a).

(a) The following survive: *moche sorowe* (trouble) *had syre gaywayn* to avoyde his hors, 204.22; *helpe me to gete*, 208.18.

**Infinitive of Result.**

**249.** The infinitive is used to express result after *so* without a correlative *as* (§ 385, 4): *neuer noue be soo hardy to doo awey this gyrdel*, 694.9.

(a) The infinitive seems to express result in the following: *I wille that ye telle hym that I am a knyzt of kynges Arthurs, for I was neuer aferd to reneye* ('deny') *my lord*, 330.21 (where the meaning evidently is 'so afraid as to deny'); *at alle tymes erly and late I wille be at your commaundement to lyue as poure a lyf as euer dyd quene*, 371.20; *God defende — that I shold defoyle you to doo syre Persaunt suche a shame*, 231.25; *for hy cause this Damas is so fals — we wold neuer fyghte for hym to dye for it*, 127.16. But the latter cases are doubtful.

**Infinitive Absolute.**

**250.** The infinitive is used absolutely in phrases of condition<sup>1</sup> similar to the absolute participial phrase: *for hym*

<sup>1</sup> The absolute infinitive of exclamation, which is found in Chaucer and persists in modern English ("To think that we were only a minute late!") does not appear in the *Morte d'Arthur*. Kellner cites one instance from *Charles the Grete*. See a, 4, following.

*thought no worship to haue a knyght at suche an auaille he to be on horsbak and he on foot*, 71.23; *And yf that he myght sle kynges Markes knyghte he to haue the truage of Cornewaile*, 461.26; *ye see — that he is a noble knyght for to consydre his fyrste bataile*, 350.21 (i. e., considering that it was his first battle); *he bereth not the lyf — that can fynde suche another knyght to speke of his prowesse and of his handes and his trouthe with alle*, 360.34; *the whiche ben knyghtes of the moost noble prowesse in the world for to accompte soo many for soo many*, 383.10.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Kellner (§ 29, pp. lxxi-lxx) groups a large number of instances under the caption *Infinitive Absolute*. The term would seem sufficiently elastic, but it must be objected that of the instances cited from the *Morte d'Arthur* and other Caxton prints most show infinitives that are not absolute (i. e., disconnected from the construction of the rest of the sentence). In fact, Kellner's instances are of five distinct kinds:

(1) Cases explained by the resumptive use of *to* after auxiliaries (§ 239): *And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette them in good paynte*, Charles the Grete, 126.3 (p. lxxviii, bottom). *The custom was suche amonge them, that none of the kynges wold helpe other, but alle the felauship of every standard to helpe other*, *Morte d'Arthur*, 533.18 (p. lxix). All the instances in the paragraph next following (p. lxix) are of the same sort, except two which belong under the next heading.

(2) Appositive Infinitive (instances included above in §§ 241, ff.).

(3) Objective Infinitive: *Morte d'Arthur*, 590.33 (cited above, § 247).

(4) Absolute infinitive of exclamation: *yf I retourne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shall do pourely, sythe they haue susteyned and borne up the crowne Imperial and my weylle*, and I now to retourne wythoute to auenge them(!) *He that gaf me such counceyll loueth me but lytel*, Charles the Grete, 16.14 (p. lxxviii).

<sup>1</sup> "In al this world ne was ther noon him lyk,  
To speke of phisik and of surgerye."

— C. T., 412 (A).

(5) Absolute infinitive of condition: (instances included above, § 250).<sup>1</sup>

(b) Thus it appears:

(1) that the infinitive absolute is not common, but rare.

(2) that it is used either in exclamations (4) or to express a condition (5).

## THE PARTICIPLE.

### Modifying Participial Phrase.

**251.** The modifying participial phrase is fairly common.

(a) with the present participle: *kynge Vther send for this duk, charging hym to brynge his wyf*, 35.6; *I wille my self assaye — not presumynge upon my self*, etc., 76.31; *a fayre yonge man — rydyng upon a leue mare*, 102.3; *smote hym in the neck — sayeng be ye a good knyght*, 103.2; *And thou as rebelle not knowynge hym as thy souerayne withholdest*, etc., 160.17; *Thus the kyng — departed leuyng the quene*, etc., 164.23; *there he fond a careful wydowe wryngynge her handes and makynge grete sorowe syttyng by a graue*, 167.8; *neuer a knyght beyng a murtherer hath worship*, 429.32.

(b) with the preterit participle (rare): *this sheld was yeuene me not desyred*, 412.4.

**252.** The reference of participles is sometimes loose and ambiguous: *the teres brast out of his eyen thynkyng on the grete curtesy that was in syr launcelot*, 819.30; *or else thou arte lyke to fyghte with somme Geaunt thy self beyng horryble and abhomynable*, 165.32.

<sup>1</sup> The only one of Kellner's instances not noted above, is *Morte d'Arthur*, 367.38, where he has mistaken the intensive adverbial prefix *to* for the preposition: *they rode into the keepers of beestes and alle to bete them*.

### Absolute Participial Phrase.

**253.** The absolute participial construction, though not common, is fully developed.

(a) with the present participle: *there came in to his halle, he syttyng in his throne Ryal xij auncyen men*, 160.4; *the kyng beyng set at his dyner, ther cam in two messagers*, 169.4; *I sette vpon this erle — my lady there beyng present*, 559.20; *the knyght felle — the blood brastyng oute of his mouth*, 594.9; *two palfreyes — bare a lytter, therin lyenge a seke knyghte*, 637.31; *my lord Arthur hym self wold not haue displayed her courtyns she beyng within her bed*, 783.6.

(b) with the preterit participle: *his myght — is most to be doubted*, *seen the noble — knyghtes of the round table*, 175.15; *Marhaus felle down — the edge of Tristrams swerd left in his brayne pan*, 283.27.

(c) Forms such as 'being seen,' 'being left,' etc., do not occur, the simple passive participle being evidently regarded as adequate.<sup>1</sup>

**254.** Sometimes an absolute participial phrase is made by mere repetition of the subject, where a simple modifying phrase might be expected: *whanne sir Tristram herd hym saye soo knyghtely, he wyste not what to do with hym*, he (Tristram) remembryng hym — *of what blood he was comen*, 307.16; *he commaunded me to bere this shelde to the Courte of kyng Arthur, he requyryng and prayenge somme good knygt to take this shelde*, etc., 340.21; *she knowyng he was there she asked where he was*, 137.4.

**255.** Constructions like the following, though part of the author's habit of loose coördination, show also that the absolute participial construction was unwieldy: *they chalengyd sire launcelot — Syr launcelot not refusyng hem but made hym*

<sup>1</sup> *beyng set* in (a) above is not preterit in meaning.



*redy*, 383.13; *they — etc and drank — and their horses walkyng and somme tyled*, 430.26.

**256.** The following prepositional phrase with a past participle has the force of an absolute participial phrase: *by this done he was so faynt that vnnethes he myght stande*, 249.24.

## TENSES.

**257.** The so-called progressive present and preterit appear in a few instances: *alweyes he wille be shotyng or castyng dartes*, 102.23; *this knyghte is goyng to the sege*, 232.4; *an Heremyte theryn whiche was goyng into masse*, 639.29.

**258.** The present of the verb 'to be' appears rarely with the force of a future (Chaucer, "I nam but deed"): *ye must courage yourself or els ye ben al shente*, 235.26.

**259.** The future periphrasis with *about* and the infinitive does not yet appear. *Aboute to doo*, 136.19, means 'engaged in doing.'

**260.** After verbs expressing purpose (intention, preparation, etc.) or belief (opinion, supposition, etc.), where the purpose is unrealized or the belief mistaken, the pluperfect (with *had*) is commonly used instead of the preterit, and the perfect infinitive (with *haue*) instead of the present: *they wend — it hadde ben sir kay*, 203.32; *I suppoosed that he had ben to yonge*, 349.5; *he yssued oute of the castel — for to haue distressid the kynges hooste*, 37.15; *syre kay dressid hym for to haue holpen syre Launcelot*, 200.24; *enlaced his helme to haue slayne hym*, 239.28; *she laboured by fals meanes to haue destroyed kyng Arthur*, 361.19; *he sette his hand therto to haue opened hit*, 710.30; *wenyng to haue slayne hym*,

209.22; *that Lyon gaped wyde and came upon hym raumpyng* to haue slayne hym, 339.30.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The *hadde* in these cases is preterit subjunctive. Parallel cases occur in which *hadde* is supplanted by *myght haue*, or *shold haue*, the *haue* adding nothing to the sense but the idea of unreality: *Thenne Bors sette his hand therto yf that he myght haue souden hit ageyne, but it wold not be.* 717.19; *and at that tyme kynge Marke said—I shold haue ben better rewarded,* 373.2 (where the meaning is ‘King Mark promised that I should be better rewarded, but I was not’); *Thenne wende sir Dynodan that he shold haue dyed,* 392.33.

(b) The idea of what is contrary to fact underlying this usage appears also in the following: *I wene and god had loued hem we shold not haue had power to haue slayne hem thus,* 701.15; *he laye as he had ben dede,* 248.14.<sup>2</sup>

**261.** In complex sentences the relation of tenses between principal and subordinate clauses is often loose in sequence.

(a) conditional:<sup>3</sup> *I wyl not torne ageyne and they were saxe me,* 220.15; *and he were as good a knyghte as euer was*

<sup>1</sup> For other instances see *Kellner*, p. lvii, § 22 (e) and 2.

<sup>2</sup> The modal force of *haue* appears also in the following: *and wel Merlyn knewe the one of the kynges shold be dede that day & loth was Merlyn that one of them both shold be slayne. But of the tweyne he had leuer kyng Lotte had be slayne* (i. e., evidently, ‘should be slain’) *than kyng Arthur,* 87.18.

The two following cases show a wavering, transitional use of *haue*: *had he not haue be,* 180.30; *ye wold haue had slayne me,* 209.29.

<sup>3</sup> W. has some remarkable conditional sentences:

My husbond *wolle* wete wyth-owtyn mare,  
And I hym *dyd* that vnryght, 287;  
                                  euyll spede the soppe  
If eny morcell *come* in thy throte  
Butt þou wyth vs *hadest* wrought, 493.

*I shalle neuer fayle hym*, 236.23; *ye shalle not soo — onles that ye were desguysed*, 767.28.

(b) temporal: *they trouthplyte eche other to loue and neuer to faylle whyles their lyfe lasteth*, 247.12.

(c) final: *gentyf knyȝt — help that I myghte speke with hym*, 363.12;<sup>1</sup> *lene me that black stede that I myghte ouertake*, 646.34; *made his prayers — that he neuer falle in dedely synne*, 658.29. Cf. § 223.

(d) causal: *sythen I maye not reioyce the — I had kepte no more ioye in this world*, 207.17.

(e) concessive: *ye maye not endure ageynste vs though ye were the best knyghtes of the world*, 704.16; *though it were here ye shalle haue noo power to see hit*, 657.33.

**262.** Even where the subordinate verb is indicative, the sequence of tenses is often loose.

(a) preterit for perfect (with *haue*): *this viij yere I was not so slepy as I am now*, 183.29; *thou hast done — more vnto me than ony knyghte dyd these xij yeres*, 185.21; *here is good mete — for we had not many a day no good repast*, 196.30; *I was never thorouly hole syn I was hurte*, 255.11; *abyde you, said sir Gawayne, that knyght — beganne not yet*, 533.2. So in indirect discourse: *his lady — said she wold loue hym better than euer she dyd*, 405.7.

(b) preterit for pluperfect (with *had*): *there they mette with a messenger that cam fro kynge Arthur that soughte them wel nyhe a xij moneth*, 159.1; *whan syr Launcelot was come to almysburye — quene gueneuer deyed but halfe an oure afore*, 857.2.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> I praye you *helpe* þat we were owte, 580.

<sup>2</sup> It is possible that this is a reminiscence of the O. E. preterit with *ær*, which was used with the force of a pluperfect.

The sequence is reversed in the following: *told the knyghte how he found her as she had slept fast*, 95.22.

**263.** The loose sequence after verbs of relating (telling, saying, reporting, etc.) is due to the confusion between direct and indirect discourse: *and when Arthure shold departe he warned al hys hoost that and they see ony swerde drawen look ye come on fyersly*, 845.21; *thenne the kyng — badde hym be redy — for within xl dayes he wold fetche hym oute of the byggest castell that he hath*, 35.30; *wel saide the kyng lete make a crye that all the lordes — shold drawe vnto a castel called Camelot in tho dayes, and ther the kyng wold*, etc., 76.7.

### THE AUXILIARIES.

be.

**264.** *Be* is used regularly as a tense-auxiliary, (a) with many intransitive verbs of motion (*come, goo, passe, aryue, entre, aryse*, etc.),<sup>1</sup> and (b) with verbs of happening (*become, falle, befall*).<sup>2</sup> But *haue* occurs also with the same verbs.

(a) *I am come*, 213.35; *thou arte come*, 214.10; *he is come*, 215.5; *syre Lancelot was come*, 217.27; *the enchaunement was past*, 186.25; *the kyng was alyghte of his hors*, 190.16; *this shyf was aryued*, 693.15; *we ben entred*, 700.35; *they within were arysen*, 712.3.

On the other hand: *I had — comen*, 691.19; *he had come*, 214.24.

(b) *where is thy courage become*, 239.19; *it is fallen on you*, 209.29; *the tempest was seased*, 706.32; *what was fallen of them*, 707.10; *thenne was so befall*, 713.29.

On the other hand: *had befallen*, 715.11.

<sup>1</sup> W. Whether (whither) that he *is* wende, 255;

And vp þe steyre *be* they gane, 446;

workemen thre

*Be* come, 538.

<sup>2</sup> *Be* is used once with a verb of deciding, to indicate the resultant state of mind: *I am delybered and fully concluded*, 162.17.

can.

**265.** In almost all cases *can* is simply an auxiliary with the sense of ability or possibility; but

(a) its earlier force (knowledge, skill) appears in sporadic cases: *alle the Barbours of Bretayne shal not conne staunche thy blood*, 176.34; *he — taughte hit an harper — and whanne he (the harper) coude hit he taughte it to many harpers*, 457.35. So in the phrase *conne thanke*, used to translate O. F. *sçavoir gré*: *they will neuer conne yow thank*, 820.22; *I can the no thanke*, 323.35.

(b) in other cases a distinction is discernible between *can*, used of the ability that comes from knowledge or skill, and *maye*, used of the ability that comes from opportunity (see *maye*, §§ 275 (a), 278): *whanne he wel couthe speke the langage*, 276.26.

Thus the following sentence cited by Kellner (p. liv, c) is not tautological, but merely emphatic: *the gretest honour that men can or may doo to a knyght*, Blanchardyn, 66.10.

(c) because the use of *can* is more restricted, and the use of *maye* less restricted, than at present, *can* does not appear so often as in modern English.

do.

**266.** *Do* is used with a following infinitive as a causative, like F. *faire*, G. *lassen*: *merlyn dyd his maister Bleyse do wryte*, 62.9.<sup>1</sup>

**267.** *Do* is used to resume a preceding verb, in order to avoid repetition: *I must take parte as they do*, 203.1;

<sup>1</sup> I.e., 'Merlyn caused his master Bleyse to have written.' But the causative construction with *do* is often irregular and redundant (see § 272) in the *Morte d'Arthur*. Kellner (p. liv) cites better instances from *Blanchardyn*. At p. lxiv, however, he cites from *Aymon* two instances of *do* followed, as sometimes in Chaucer, by a passive ptc.

*she loueth you as wel as ye doo her*, 246.27; *she shalle dye the moost vylanous dethe that euer dyd any woman*, 694.13.<sup>1</sup>

**268.** *Do* is used with the infinitive to make compound forms for the present and preterit: *I trust I do not dysplese god*, 857.32; *he dyd commaunde hys trompettes to blowe*, 173.9; *she dyd staunche sir gareths woundes*, 267.28; *alle the trouthe syr Gahalantyne dyd telle*, 212.23; *he dyd byd syr Gaherys stande a syde*, 376.13; *soo they dyd fare*, 385.8;<sup>2</sup> *worshipfully he dyd gouerne hit*, 334.10; *as soone as my lord kynge Mark doo knowe you*, 371.13; *he wounded hem sore alle that dyd abyde*, 384.25.

It will be observed that this periphrasis adds no emphasis. Though it is not common, it is evidently well established.

**gar.**

**269.** *Gar* (O. N. *göra*) is used (rarely, and only in the preterit *garte*)<sup>3</sup> as a causative auxiliary, like *do*. The form is common in Northern poetry: *garte hym go*, 111.28; *he garte vnarme them & bete hem*, 184.23.

**have.**

**270.** For the use of *haue* as a tense-auxiliary, the confusion of subjunctive and indicative in the preterit, and the modal force apparent at times, see § 260, (a), (b), and note.

<sup>1</sup> W. Dame, and ye hadde ben wyth vs,  
Ye would haue wrought, by swete Ihesus,  
As welle as *dyd* we, 607

<sup>2</sup> W. The thyrd *did* rele and spynne, 529;  
Hys garlond — that neuer *dyd* fade, 663.

<sup>3</sup> *Gar* is printed as a prefix in *gar-make*: *I wyllle founde & gar-make an hows of relygyon*, 825.25.

let.

**271.** *Lete* is the common causative auxiliary (cf. G. lassen): *the kynge lete rere and deuyse — a faire abbeye — and lete it calle the Abbey of la beale aduenture*, 123.10; *he lete fetche leches and serche his woundes*, 135.19.<sup>1</sup> These causative auxiliaries, *do*, *gar*, *let*, etc., are followed regularly by the active infinitive.<sup>2</sup>

**272.** *Lete* is often used with other causatives in various redundant expressions: *he lete the surgyens doo serche their hurtes*, 174.14.

make.

**273.** *Make* is also used as a causative auxiliary: *I shal make stryke of thy heed*, 840.5; *syr Mordred maad wryte wryttes*, 840.20; *syr Kay made cary sir Vwayne to the abbay*, 402.14; *he made to sarche hym and to stoppe his bledynge woundes*, 351.1. The passive infinitive occurs in a few cases: *there he made her to be kept*, 369.6.

may and might.

**274.** Both *maye* and *myghte* are used to express ability and possibility, in a very wide range of meanings.

(a) Simple possibility, with no idea of contingency, like *can*:

(1) *may*: *there may no thyng plese vs*, 840.35; *I may not stonde, myn hede werches soo*, 848.1; *thou mayst not chese*, 187.9; *I may neuer be quyte of hym*, 226.30; *a knyght may lytel do that may not suffre a damoisel*, 229.29; *mysdedes that*

<sup>1</sup> W. The chambyr he lett make fast, 85;  
After the wryght the lord lett sende, 106;  
And lett preue yt be (by) syght, 480.

<sup>2</sup> In certain rare cases the passive is found: *she lete foyson be put in a pyece of syluer*, 275.9. See § 273, and Killner, p. lxiii, b.

*ben done maye not ben vndone*, 240.19; *it maye not be fals that alle men saye*, 332.20.<sup>1</sup>

(2) *myghte*: *as faste fleyng as euer they myghte ryde*, 184.3; *al theyre strength that they myȝt dryue*, 191.35; *there myght neyder sheldes nor harneis hold theyr strokes*, 194.8; *as wel as they myght*, 203.26; *the moost royallest wyse that myghte be*, 215.29; *I had as moche to doo as I myght*, 218.11; *syre Gareth myghte not etc.*, 246.10; *he bledde so fast that he myghte not stande*, 248.12.

(b) Possibility, with some idea of contingency:

(1) *maye*: *Hope ye soo that I maye — stand a proued knyght*, 218.13; *we shalle greue hem that ('what') we may*, 191.2; *and ye may matche the rede knyght ye shall be*, etc., 233.1; *it may well be*, 234.37; *wel maye he be a kynges sone*, 244.28; *telle vs where we may fynde*, 251.23; *we must purueye vs of goode knyghtes where we may get them*, 255.35.

(2) *myghte*: *Bors sette his hand therto, yf that he myght haue souted hit agayne*, 717.19; *I myȝt haue had mete ynouȝ*, 229.36.<sup>2</sup>

**275.** Both *may(e)* and *myght(e)* are used to denote permission or opportunity.

(a) *may(e)*: *ye may say what ye wylle*, 221.9; *ye may not be lodged here*, 265.37; *I maye not warne (prevent) peple to speke of me what it pleaseth hem*, 198.2; *ye may worshipfully — graunte hem*, 213.37; *so that I may haue herberowē*, 264.2.

(b) *myght(e)*: *thenne — ye myȝt haue blamed me*, 253.4; *that (boon) was that he myghte haue thadventure of the damoyssel*, 253.10; *praid the ladyes that he myȝt repose hym*, 265.36.

<sup>1</sup> W. *Loue me, I pray you, in þat ye maye*, 155; *Swyngyll better yf ye may*, 395.

<sup>2</sup> W. *The proctoure stode in a stody*

*Whether he myght worke hem by*, 497.



**276.** As an extension of the preceding usage, both *may(e)* and *myght(e)* are used to denote a future contingency: *doo you seruyse as maye lye in oure powers*, 251.3; *ever haue ye wayte upon hym tyl ye may fynde hym slepyng*, 242.37 (cf. § 219); (*and ye myghte lyue*) *as longe as the world myght endure*, 701.28.

**277.** Finally, *may(e)* and *myght(e)* appear as modal auxiliaries —

(a) in final clauses: *Now make the redy that I maye juste with the*, 260.14; *Go thenne for her — that we may be apoynted*, 268.31; *there were scaffoldis — that lordes — myghte beholde*, 191.8. For the subjunctive in final clauses, see § 222.

(b) in clauses of indirect question: *wyst not who myghte be her kynge*, 722.20; *he merueiled what he myȝt be*, 259.38. For the subjunctive in parallel cases, see § 228.

**278.** It is to be observed that mod. E. has *may* and *might* in clauses of purpose, *can* and *could* in clauses of result. In the fifteenth century this limitation had not yet been established. *May(e)* and *myght(e)*, in the sense of mod. E. *can* and *could*, occur in both kinds of clauses. For the real distinction between *may* and *can*, see *can*, § 265 (b).

**must.**

**279.** *Must(e)*<sup>1</sup> has passed over completely to the modern sense of necessity or obligation. The same invariable form serves for present, past and future time.

(a) present: *thou muste dye*, 209.6.

(b) past: *they held the Iourneye — tyl it was nyȝt. Thenne must they nedes departe*, 704.35; *he cam to chaace me & other I must slee hym or he me*, 83.26.

<sup>1</sup> For the survival of the form *mote*, see paradigm, § 204.

(c) future: *than come in — kynge Ban — Ha a said kyng Lot we must be discomfyte*, 57.35; *this knyght — had hanged it* (the horn) *ȝp ther that yf ther came ony arraunte knyghte he muste*<sup>1</sup> *blowe*, 236.16.

### ought.

*Ought(e)* shows various transitional stages, alike in use and in meaning.

#### 280. The present *owe*:

(a) survives in its original sense of ownership: *a lord that oweth yonder cyte*, 228.19.

(b) is used also in the derivative sense of obligation or duty: *the feythe we owe ȝnto god*, 233.8; *yf ye owe hym good wille*, 244.8; *I owe hym my scruyse*, 245.14; and, with an infinitive object, *I owe of ryght to worship you*, 267.22; *by no manere owe I to say ylle of hym*, 798.20.

#### 281. The preterit *ought(e)* is used, both personally and impersonally:

(a) in the original sense of ownership: *the knyghte to whome the paucione ought*, 188.33; *a duke oughte it*, 199.31; *Garwayne — ranne to hym that ought the lady*, 336.32.

(b) in the sense of propriety, or fitness: *yf he bere me as truly as me oughte to be born*, 694.6; *here is a gyrdle that oughte to be sette aboute the suerd*, 699.30; *wel oughte our lord be sygnifyed to an herte*, 703.19; *buried her as rycheley as a kynges doughter oughte to be*, 722.4.

(c) in the sense of duty or obligation: *I sawe neuer man that I oughte so good wille to*, 292.3; *it oughte not to be done away*, 694.9; *this knyght ouȝte to passe*, 697.28; *thou oughtest not to doo hit*, 711.11; *that me ouȝt to do*, 840.1.

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of the older "moste" (i. e., 'might') is possible here.

shall.

**282.** PRIMARY MEANING: SHOLD OF NECESSITY, OBLIGATION, DUTY (ALL PERSONS).

1. *to whome I shold be moost debonair shall I be most felon*, 694.18; *me thynketh I shold haue sene hym here to fore*, 370.32.

2. *ye dyd no thyng but as ye shold doo*, 230.7; *though I prayse the lady that I loue moost ye shold not be wrothe*, 358.22.

3. *dyd ful nobly as a noble kyng shold*, 846.10.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The primary meaning of necessity appears in the use of *shall* of what is ordained or appointed, as in the prophecies of Merlyn: *Sire seid the damoyzell ye nede not to pulle half so hard; for he that shalle pulle it out shal do it with lytel myghte*, 76.36; *and that fysshe is called Ertanax, and his bones be of suche a maner of kynde that who that handeleth hem shalle haue soo moche wille that he shalle neuer be wery and he shalle not thynke on Ioye nor sorow that he hath had*, 692.26.

(b) *shold* appears in corresponding passages of indirect discourse: *Merlyn told kynge Arthur that he that shold destroye hym shold be borne in may day*, 75.12; *now are the wonders true that were sayd of Launcelot du lake, that the swerd whiche stak in the stone shold gyue me—a buffet*, 689.33.

**283.** SHALL OF INJUNCTION OR THREAT (SECOND AND THIRD PERSONS).

2. *thou shalt dye*, 337.22.

(a) *Shall* in this use has commonly the force of an imperative: *ye shal ryde on afore*, 197.8; *here shalt thou swere*, 211.4; *ye shall leue alle your malyce*, 332.15; *Thou*

<sup>1</sup> W. I wyst my lord neuer do ryght noght  
Of no þing þat *schuld* be wrought, 598.\*

shalt wete that he is fals, 335.7; here shalle ye abyde me these ten dayes, 353.27; ye shall not doo so, 355.17; ye shalle goo in to oure lordes temple, 697.30; ye thre shalle departe, 706.19.

3. she shalle be my lady, 237.8; thy skyn shalle be as wel heven as thy cote, 341.12; there shalle not passe but one of you at ones, 349.19.

(b) SHOLD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

gaf me charge — that I shold neuer discover hym, 241.27; sir Nabon had made a crye that alle the peple of that yle shold be at his castel the fyfthe day after, 332.24; sire Nerouens told sir Launcelot that he (Launcelot) shold not goo by the castel of Pendragon, 346.35.

**284.** SHALL OF SIMPLE FUTURITY (ALL PERSONS).

1. I shalle putte an enchauntement vpon hym, 186.14; we shalle haue ynough to doo eyther of vs to socoure other, 331.5; where shalle I fynde hym, 365.21.

2. by his deth ye shal haue none auantage, 240.18; I drede me sore lest ye shalle ketch some hurte, 229.12.

3. the more shalle be my worship, 228.14; That shal not nede, 337.27.<sup>1</sup>

(a) SHOLD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

a damoyse — told hym that he shold weynne grete worship, 378.2.

**285.** SHOLD OF SIMPLE FUTURITY (THIRD PERSON).

alle the cuntry afore them there ('where') they shold ('were about to') ryde, 52.34; whan he shold haue ben ('was about to be') slayne, 212.6.

<sup>1</sup> W. And that *shall* do the good, 159.

This use of *shold* is developed directly from the primary meaning of necessity. The latent idea of appointment is often apparent.

**286.** SHALL OF FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF PROMISE

(ALL PERSONS).

1. *I shall not faile you*, 188.23; *We shal ben redy at all tymes*, 225.28; *whanne I maye I shalle hyhe me after you*, 353.32; *I promyse you — I shalle brynge hym — or els I shalle dye*, 397.21.

2. *ye shalle haue your askyng*, 214.4.

3. *al shal be delyuerd*, 194.33; *lete vs be sworne to gyders that neuer none of vs shalle after this day haue adoo with other*, 355.24.<sup>1</sup>

(a) SHOLD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

*syre Tristram and sire Lamorak sware that neuer none of hem sholde fyghte ageynst other*, 355.25; *ye sware that ye shold not haue a do with your felauship*, 401.28; *she made hym to swere that he shold neuer do none enchauntement*, 119.13.

**287.** SHALL OF FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF RESOLVE

(FIRST PERSON).

*that knyght is my felawe & hym shalle I rescowe*, 347.3; *but yf thou wilt promyse me to abyde with me here I shalle slee thee*, 374.10; *I shal assaye to handle hit*, 692.33.

**shold as a Modal Auxiliary.**

**288.** IN THE APODOSIS OF UNREAL CONDITIONS.

1. *wherin we shold haue entryd ne had your tydynges ben*, 699.36; *and god had loued hem we shold not haue had power*,

<sup>1</sup> W. Forty marke *schall* be your mede, 157; Syr, that deede *schall* be done, 160.

701.15; *had ye ben fresshe — as I was I wote wel I shold not haue endured so longe*, 350.29.

2. *and I had wȳst that, thou sholdest not haue departed*, 408.3; *and ye were gentyl — ye shold not profer me shame*, 442.14.

3. *and kynge Arthur were here hym self, it shold not lye in his power to saue his lyf*, 335.15; *and he had ben in the realme — somme of his felawes — shold haue foud hym*, 411.19<sup>1</sup>; and with protasis implied: *that shold moche repente me*, 806.35.

(a) The derivation of this use from the original use of *shold* appears in the following: *syre Tristram shold haue had the werse had not the kynge with the hunderd knyghtes be*, 387.3, where *shold* might be replaced by *must* without much change of sense. Cf. also: *for that cause I wil spare you — els ye shold Iuste with me*, 336.30 (i. e., would be obliged to joust).

## 289. IN CLAUSES OF APPPOSITION AFTER CERTAIN EXCLAMATIONS.

The construction occurs most commonly after *it is pyte*, *it is shame*, less frequently after *fy* and *alas*: *pyte and shame it is that ony of you shold take the hyhe ordre of knyghthode*, 357.15; *pyte it were that eyther of these good knyghtes shold destroye others blood*, 420.20; *Hit is pyte — that cuer ony suche fals knyght coward as kynge Marke is shold be matched with suche a fayre lady*, 425.29; *Fy for shame that cuer suche fals treason shold be wrought*, 378.27; *alas — that cuer a knyghte shold dye wepenles*, 209.15. For the subjunctive in explanatory clauses of apposition, see § 231.

(a) The idea of necessity is latent in this construction also. An extension of the usage appears in sentences like

<sup>1</sup> W. Hadest þou done that dede with me —

That *schuld* torne me to woo, 436.

For the subjunctive in parallel cases, see § 213.

the following: *Thenne was sir Bryan ful gladde — and alle his knyghtes that suche a man shold weynne them*, 348.9.

## 290. IN FINAL CLAUSES.

*I come to you that ye shold make me knyght*, 339.5; *for his sake and (for) pyte(,) that he sholde not be destroyed, I folowed hym*, 349.1; *there folowed hym twelue knyghtes for to haue meschyeued hym for this cause that vpon the morn — he shold not weynne the vitory*, 384.15; *syre Tristram alyghte of his hors — that they shold not slee his hors*, 414.1<sup>1</sup>; *Thenne she refused hym in a maner — for the cause he shold be the more ardent*, 653.30 (see § 364.3).

(a) Apparently, where *shold* is used in this sense, the subject of the final clause is always different from the subject of the principal clause.

(b) *Shold* appears (rarely) also in clauses after verbs of fearing: *syre Palomydes was adrad lest he shold haue ben drowned*, 396.4; *he feryd sore that syre Tristram shold gete hym worship*, 400.32. But cf. § 284, 2.

## 291. IN OBJECT CLAUSES.

(a) *Shold* in many object clauses is due simply to indirect discourse or to tense sequence.

Indirect Discourse:  
*he badde me I shold not haue ado with hym*, 417.1.

Principal Verb Preterit:  
*I wiste wel by the maner of their rydyng bothe that sire Palomydes shold haue a falle*, 384.11. Cf. § 284, a.

Direct Discourse:  
(*ye shalle not haue ado with me.*) See § 283.

Principal Verb Present:  
(*I wote wel — sire Palomydes shall haue a falle.*) See § 284.

<sup>1</sup> W. For hys wyfe he made that place,  
That no man *schuld* beseke her of grace, 100.

(b) *Shold* appears in "complementary final clauses" after the preterit tense of a verb of wishing, fearing, asking, commanding, etc., where a present tense would be followed by the subjunctive (§ 232): *god wold that ye shold put hym from me*, 221.29; *badde hym that he shold goo*, 179.24; *commaunded that noo man — shold not robbe*, 182.32; *commaunded that dame Elayne shold slepe in a chamber nyghe her chamber*, 581.26.<sup>1</sup>

(c) *Shall* appears very rarely in parallel cases after a present tense, where the subjunctive is the regular construction (§ 232): *what will ye that I shalle doo*, 633.16.

will.

## 292. WILL OF RESOLVE, DETERMINATION.

1. *In that paucione wil I lodge*, 188.27; *I wylle slee her maugre thy hede*, 210.10; *from hens wyl I neuer goo*, 850.25; *I wille be reuengyd*, 337.8.

(a) The first person plural sometimes has the force of a mild imperative: *Fayr broder said sir Tristram — lete vs cast vpon vs clokes and lete vs goo see the play. Not soo said sir Persydes, we wille not goo lyke knaues thyder, but we wille ryde lyke men*, 382.2; *Note felawes said syr Tristram here wylle we departe in sondry wayes*, 406.35.

2. *is this your ansuer, that ye wylle reffuse vs*, 187.18.

3. *I am sure ye shalle be disconeryd by this lytel brachet, for she wille neuer leue you*, 371.12.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> W. So feyre the wyfe the lord gan praye

That he *schuld* be working aye, 247.

<sup>2</sup> A sort of personification, assigning determination to things inanimate, may underlie the use of *wylle* in the following: *A sayd the kyng, syn ye knowe of your aduventure puruey for hit and put away by your craftes that mysauenture. Nay said Merlyn it wylle not be*, 119.6. The meaning, however, seems to be 'it cannot be,' or 'it is not to be,' which brings this use of *will* into close correspondence with *shall*, § 282, a. See also § 293, a, for the parallel use of *wold*.



## (a) WOULD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

*al the countrey sayde they wold holde of sire Tristram.*

**293.** WOULD OF RESOLVE, DETERMINATION (THIRD PERSON).

*a knyghte — cryed vndo the dore, but they wold not, 713.37; sire launcelot wold not suffer that, 351.21; he putte sir Bryan de les yles from his landes for cause he wold neuer be withhold with kynge Arthur, 352.26; he reffused hem al he wold doo none other, 215.11; there was a knyghte wold not lete hem passe, 359.27.*

(a) Some personification, assigning determination to things inanimate, may underlie the phrase *it wold not be*, which seems, however, to mean 'it was not to be,' or 'it could not be' (cf. foot-note to § 292, 3): *of a dede man how men wold haue heren, and it wolde not be* (Caxton's Rubric), 27.26; *he pulled at the sword with alle his myghte, but it wold not be, 42.10; he loked for the scaubard, but it wold not be founde, 138.7; Bors sette his hand therto yf that he myght haue souted hit ageyne, but it wold not be, 717.19.*

**294.** WILL OF WISH.

1. *I wyll as ye wyll, 725.1; I wyl that thou wete, 195.2* ('I wish you to understand').

2. *goo where somener thou wilt, 341.1; what wyll ye with hit, 357.21; wyll ye ony more scrnyse of me, 197.28; ye may chese whether ye wyll dye or lyue, 200.38.*

## (a) WOULD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

*told her how ther was a knyght wold haue herberowe, 263.33.*

**295.** WOULD OF WISH.

1. *by my wille I wold haue dryuen hym aweye, 349.7.*

3. *he hadde the lordes come after who that wold*, 267.38; *There was neyther syre Tristram neyther syre Dynas nor syre Fergus that wold sir Sadok ony cuylle weylle*, 469.34.<sup>1</sup>

Participle, *many tymes he myghte haue had her and he had wold*, 232.17.

(a) *Wold* (preterit subjunctive) is used (often with *fayne*) in the sense of F. *voudrais* bien, G. *möchte* gern.

1. *I wold he receyued it*, 199.30 ('I should like to have him receive it'); *I wold he hadde his dwerf, for I wold he were not wroth*, 245.10; *I wold fayne ye sawe her*, 241.31; *I wold I had not mette with you*, 374.14.

2. *what knyght was that — that ye wold fayne mete with*, 356.34; *syn ye wold so fayne entre*, 714.7.

3. *for the renome and bounte that they here of you they wold haue your loue*, 187.30; *syr Gareth — wold ful fayne — haue had a lodgyng*, 263.18.<sup>2</sup>

(b) *Wold* is used in expressions of fervent wish: *Thesu wold that the lady of the castel perillous were so fayre*, 246.5.

## 296. WILL OF WILLINGNESS.

1. *Vpon a couenant — I wille telle you my name*, 336.7; *lend me hors and sure armour and I wille haue adoo with the*, 333.18; *I wil wel*, 239.10 ('je veux bien').

2. *thanked be thou lord that thou wilt touchesaufe to calle vs thy synners*, 720.25; *and ye wille telle me your quarel*, etc., 335.31 (so often in protasis).

3. *many speke behynde a man more than they wylle saye to his face*, 335.17; *Is there ony of you here that wille take vpon*

<sup>1</sup> W. Gold and syluer they me brought,  
And forsoke yt, and *would* yt noght, 589.

<sup>2</sup> W. And *would* haue had yt fayne, 234;  
I *would* nott he myght yt wete, 289;  
Now *would* I fayne ete, 336.

*hym to welde this shelde, 340.25; that merueylled me — that  
ony man of worship wyllle haue adoo with hym, 221.35.*

(a) WOULD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

*asked hym whether he wold goo, 353.20.*

**297.** WOULD OF WILLINGNESS.

1, 2. *thouȝ ye wold breke your othe, I wold not breke myn,  
401.31.*

3. *Thenne was there not one that wold speke one word,  
340.26; I thanke hym of his curtosye and goodenes that he  
wold ('was willing to') take vpon hym suche labour for me,  
234.14.*

**298.** WOULD OF CUSTOMARY ACTION.

*and thenne sir Tristram wold go in to the wilderness and  
brast doune the trees and bowes, and otherewhyle whan he foud  
the harp that the lady sente hym, thenne wold he harpe and  
playe thereupon, and wepe to gyders, and somtyme — the lady  
— wold — playe vpon that harp. Thenne wold sire Tristram  
come to that harpe and herken ther to, and somtyme he wold  
harpe hym self, 366.6.*

(a) The derivation from the sense of wish appears in the following: *and euer for the most party he wold be in syr  
launcelots company, 270.6; euer whanne that he sawe ony  
Iustyng of knyghtes, that wold he see and he myght, 215.22.*

(b) *Will* is used occasionally to express customary action: *But for the moost party they wille not lyghte on foote with  
yonge knyghtes, 344.28; alweyes he wille be shotynge or  
castynge dartes and glad for to see batailles, 102.23.* Here  
the derivation is plain from the sense of wish or willingness.  
Cf. also the proverb: *lyke wille drawe to lyke, 388.13.*

**299.** WILL OF FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF PROMISE  
(FIRST PERSON).

*to his helpe I wylle doo my power*, 206.3; *that wylle I doo by the feithe of my body*, 211.7; *al this wil I do*, 240.33; *yf I was mysauysed I wille amende hit*, 359.4.

(a) WOULD IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

*they promysed her that they wold be nyghe*, 373.30.

**300.** WILL OF SIMPLE FUTURITY (ALL PERSONS).

1. *what wille we doo*, 125.20; *ryde on afore — and I wylle kepe myself in couerte*, 197.8; *where ye are called the damoyssel Maledysaunt I wille calle you the damoyssel Bien pensaunt*, 349.10; *yf I may spede wel I wille sende for you*, 349.23.

2. *this is your aduys ('plan') that — ye wylle doo make a crye ayenst the feest*, 254.26.

3. *there wille mete with you another maner knyght*, 351.4; *lete me goo as aduenture will lede me*, 706.12.

**301.** WOULD OF FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF INTENTION (THIRD PERSON).

*they — sawe the good man in a religious wede — for he wold ('was about to') synge masse*, 702.33; *whanne she wold haue taken her flyghte, she henge by the legges fast*, 208.14.

**Wold as a Modal Auxiliary.**

**302.** in the apodosis of unreal conditions:

1. *were I at my lyberte — I wold preue hit*, 187.15; *I wold not haue hurte sir Tristram and I had knowen hym*, 395.24.

2. *and thou haddest syre Tristram here, thou woldest do hym no harme*, 405.20.

3. *and he had come of gentylmen he wold haue axed of you hors and armour*, 214.24; *he — wold haue slayne them had they not yelded them*, 350.8.

(a) in “as if” conditions: *ther felle a sodeyne tempest and thunder — as alle the crthe wold haue broken*, 706.30.

(b) with protasis implied: *I wold be lothe to doo that thyng*, 806.29.

For the subjunctive in parallel cases see §§ 213, b, 214.

(a) The development of this usage from the other uses of *will* and *wold* may be traced in instances that mark the transition.

(1) from the sense of wish: *yf I myght with my worship I wold not haue a doo with yow*, 202.37; *with falshede ye wold haue slayne me and now it is fallen on you bothe*, 209.28; *Alle this dyd sir Andred by cause he wold haue had sir Tristrams landes*, 368.24 (i. e., in the event of Tristram's death); *he wold not haue lusted, but whether he wold or not syre Tristram smote hym*, 393.29.

(2) from the sense of willingness: *thenne were I a foole and I wold leue this swerd*, 207.5; *and I had a quarel — I wold with as good a wyll fyghte with hym as with yow*, 439.20; *and a wolf and a shepe were to gyders in a pryson, the wolf wold suffre the sheep to be in pees*, 405.21.

(3) from the sense of intention: *as she wold haue ronne upon the swerd*, etc., 368.34; *he — pulled hym afore hym — and there wolde haue stryken of his hed*, 369.30; *they wold haue lodged to gyders. But*, etc., 376.20. For the use of *haue* in this construction, see § 260, a, b, and note.

### 303. in substantive clauses:

(a) *Will* and *wold* appear in “complementary final clauses” after verbs of asking, etc. The cases are essentially parallel with the subjunctive (§ 232) which they supplant, but imply a somewhat more formal courtesy. The use is derived directly from the sense of willingness:

and there I praye you that ye wille be, 408.8; I byseeche yow — that ye wylle praye for my soule, 801.16; prayenge — that he wold fulfyll the quest, 340.23; he asked — that I wold gyue hym mete, 253.8.

(b) So *wold* is used to make a subjunctive periphrasis in clauses after verbs of fearing: *for drede of sir Dynadan that he wold telle*, etc., 436.9.

### Confusion of shall and will.

**304.** The following passages seem to indicate that in the first person, at least, *shall* and *will* are not only confused, but even used interchangeably: *That shalle we not doo says his bretheren we wylle fynde hym and we may lyue. So shal I sayd syr Kay*, 196.23<sup>1</sup>; *enr whan I maye I shalle sende vnto you — and at alle tymes — I wille be at your commaundement*, 371.18; *Thenne wold I haue baumed hit — and dayly I shold haue clypped the*, 207.19.

Whether this confusion is merely apparent, or whether it really exists, and to what extent, will appear best from a comparative table.

### 305. FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF RESOLVE (FIRST PERSON).

<i>Aryse — or els there as thou knedest I shall slee thee</i> , 337.26.	<i>I wylle slee her maugre thy hede</i> , 210.10.
<i>In the name of god said Percyual I shalle assaye to handle hit</i> , 692.33.	<i>As ye haue begonne so ende, for I wyll neuer medle with you</i> , 405.9.

(a) Here, though some confusion is evident, the idea of resolve is far more feebly and, it may be added, far less frequently conveyed by *shall*.

<sup>1</sup> W. That *wyll* I wete thys same nyght, 128.  
That *schall* I wete thys same daye, 422.

### 306. FUTURITY WITH THE IDEA OF PROMISE (FIRST PERSON).

<i>I shall not faile you, 188.23.</i>	<i>atte next feest of Pentecost I wille be at Arthurs courte, 352.15.</i>
---------------------------------------	---

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

<i>syre Tristram and sire Lamorak sware that neuer none ('neither') of hem sholde fyghte ageynst other, 355.25.</i>	<i>they promised that they wold be nyghe, 373.30.</i>
---	---

(a) Here there is real confusion. In the following section some distinction seems to appear in the second person.

### 307. SIMPLE FUTURITY: SHALL AND WILL (ALL PERSONS).

<i>1. for your noble dedes of armes I shall shewe to you kyndenes, 350.31.</i>	<i>1. for that cause I wil spare you, 336.30.</i>
<i>2. I am sure ye shall be discoveryd, 371.12.</i>	<i>2. this is your aduys (‘plan’) that ye wille doo make a crye agens the feest, 254.26.</i>
<i>3. knowe thou—that he shal make stronge werre ageynst the, 160.21; That shal not nede (i. e., ‘that will not be necessary’), 337.27.</i>	<i>3. I knowe wel that he wylle greue some of the courte—for on hym knyghtes wylle be bolde, 201.30.<sup>1</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup> In indirect discourse the same distinction appears as in § 308: *sir Kechydins saide that he wolde* (‘was about to’) *goo into Bretayne, 367.33*, where the idea of resolve is latent; *and they told hym that there was made a grete crye of turnement bitwene kynge Carados—and the kynge of North walys, and cyther sholde* (‘was to’) *juste ageyne other, 377.16*, where the latent idea is of something ordained or appointed.

**308. SIMPLE FUTURITY: SHOLD AND WOLD (THIRD PERSON).**

<i>whan Arthur shold ('was about to') departe he warned al hys hoost that, etc., 845.22.</i>	<i>sawe the good man in a religious wede — for he wold ('was about to') synge masse, 702.33.</i>
--	--

(a) Here there is a distinction. *Shold* implies appointment; *wold*, intention. The distinction appears in the following:

<i>there upon the morn shold be a grete turnement, 226.12.</i>	<i>whanne syr Launcelot wold haue gone ('was about to go') thorou oute them, they scatteryd, 206.21.</i>
--	--

**309. SHOLD AND WOLD IN THE APODOSIS OF UNREAL CONDITIONS (ALL PERSONS).**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <i>had ye been fresshe — as I was I wote wel I shold not haue endured so longe, 350.29.</i></p>    | <p>1. <i>though she had brought with her syre launcelot — I wold thyнке myself good ynough, 234.35; that shameful syght causeth me to haue courage — more than I wold haue had — and thou were a wel ruled knyght, 237.30.</i></p> |
| <p>2. <i>and they wyste that ye were of — Arthurs courte, ye shold be assayled anone, 700.23.</i></p>    | <p>2. <i>What wold ye do — &amp; ye had sir Tristram, 390.11.</i></p>  |
| <p>3. <i>thenne felle there a thonder and a rayne as heuen and erthe shold goo to gyder, 263.19.</i></p> | <p>3. <i>forthe with ther felle a sodeyne tempest and thonder — as alle the erthe wold haue broken, 706.29.</i></p>  |



**310.** SHOLD AND WOLD IN OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF WISHING, ETC.

<i>god wold that ye shold put hym from me, 221.29.</i>	<i>I wold that ye wold lede me therto, 716.23.</i>
--	--

(a) In this section and the preceding, a distinction seems to be kept in the second person. It is evident, moreover, that *shold* loses much more of its identity than *wold*, and is more freely used as a mere modal auxiliary.

**311.** To what extent the logical distinction between *shall* and *will* according to the person of the subject obtains in this period, appears from the arrangement of instances in the foregoing sections.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**312.** The common Chaucerian forms persist: *hym thought*, 184.5; *me repenteth*, 185.25; *the behoueth*, 187.5; *me ought*, 201.19; *it pleaseth hem*, 198.3; *me semeth*, 202.30; *how lyketh yow*, 215.26; *me lacketh*, 115.15; *hym neded*, 216.35; *hym besemeth*, 220.4; *hym lyst*, 230.15; *me forthynketh*, 713.23; *hym happend*, 200.2; *hyfelle hym*, 712.17.

(a) But there is a very evident wavering, the impersonal construction existing side by side with a newly formed personal construction, or in some cases giving way before it: *and ye lyst*, 206.35; *ye nede not*, 76.36; *he shalle repente*, 153.24; *he forthoughte hym*, 712.31; *they thoughte it soo swete that hit was merucillous to telle*, 719.28.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

**313.** The verbs used reflexively are as follows:

- (a) assente: *I assente me*, 71.12.
- (b) auyse: *balyn auysed hym*, 92.32.
- (c) cast: *I cast me to be there*, 196.9.

- (d) *complayne*: *he wold not complayne hym*, 848.14.
- (e) *desmaye*: *desmaye you not*, 699.24.
- (f) *doubte*: *doubte the no thyng*, 166.1.
- (g) *drede*: *he dred hym sore*, 206.17.
- (h) *ferē*: *I shal not fere me*, 840.1.
- (i) *haste*: *haste you to the courte*, 196.21.
- (j) *hy(h)e*: *he — hyed hym*, 206.29.
- (k) *playe*: *he wente to playe hym*, 708.20.
- (l) *purpose*: *he purposed hym*, 724.5.
- (m) *remembre*: *she remembryd her*, 696.14.
- (n) *repente*: *I repente me*, 701.29.
- (o) *thynke*, *bethynke*, *forthynke*: *he thought hym self to preue hym self*, 183.20; *syr Beaumayns bethoughte hym*, 239.31; *he forthoughte hym*, 712.31.

#### VERBS TAKING TWO OBJECTS.

**314.** The verbs *berue* and *benime* sometimes take two accusatives: *byreue hym his londes*, 163.14; *the Lyon berafte hym his sheld*, 578.34; *that stede he hath benome me*, 647.13; *I haue benome hym many of his men*, 653.3; *syr launcelot had berafte hym his quene*, 814.27. This construction holds even in the passive: *many londes that were bereued lordes*, 44.7; *al welthe is hym berafte*, 400.8. But the construction with *of* occurs: *to bireue me of my landes*, 675.8.<sup>1</sup>

(a) The verbs *aske* and *requyre* sometimes show a similar construction: *Trystram — asked hym counceyl*, 279.13 (the ordinary construction is with *of*. See § 338.9 and a); *ye requyre me the grettest thyng that ony man may requyre me*, 732.3.

(b) The following may involve a dative of interest: *I discharge the this Courte — and I forfende the my felaulshyp*, 727.7.

<sup>1</sup> O. E. has sometimes the accusative, sometimes the genitive, of the thing deprived, but regularly the accusative (usually a pronoun) of the person.

## THE PASSIVE.

**315.** The sole O. E. passive (*hātan*) is still in use: *what* heteth *your lady*, 216.3. The present, however, is extremely rare. The preterit, though often found, is much less common than in Chaucer: *the one* hyght *Tyntagil*, and *the other castel* hyȝt *Terrahyl*, 35.36; *there was a kynge* that hyghte *Pelles*, 695.26.

**316.** The regular passive periphrasis with *be* needs no exemplification. The only advance appears in the freedom with which this construction is applied to verbs compounded with prepositions: *thus was syr Arthur* — *cuyt sayd of*, 840.25; *they were foughen with al*, 29.14; *sir Persydes was soo done to*, 385.16.

**317.** Two older passive periphrases are still in common use:

(a) The construction with the impersonal *men* (§ 73), and more rarely

(b) The construction with *a-* and a verbal noun (§ 340, b): *whyle as this was a doyng*, 84.12.

**318.** The active infinitive is often used in a passive sense after auxiliaries (see §§ 266, 269, 271, 273).

**319.** An active infinitive with passive force appears in a few instances after "it is": *hit is* to suppose *he that henge that sheld ther he wille not be longe ther fro*, 141.9;<sup>1</sup> *what is* to meane *that syre Launcelot felle doune of his hors he hath left pryde and taken hym to humylyte*, 669.30 (an obscure passage).

The construction seems to be a Gallicism (*c'est à supposer*).

<sup>1</sup> W. Of thys chaplett hym was full fayne,

And of his wyfe, *was nott to layne*, 68

(i. e., 'it was not to be denied'). Shakspeare has "what's to do." See Abbott, 359.

## PREPOSITIONS.

**320. aboute** with the infinitive means 'engaged in' (see § 259): *and thou to be aboute to dishonoure the noble kynge*, 774.4 (i. e., 'to be engaged in dishonouring'); *Madame ye are aboute to bitraye me*, 775.28.

**321. afore** (see *before* and *tofore*, and for the *a-*, *on*, § 340) is used (rarely) of precedence or excellence: *there was none that myghte do no manere of maystry afore hym*, 467.35.

**322. after.**

1. 'according to': *euery man was set after his degree*, 104.18; *alle thys shalle be done after your entente*, 243.13.

2. with verbs of desiring, where *for* is usual: *we wysshed after yow*, 199.23; *he asked after mete*, 201.21.

**323. ageynst(e), ayenst, ageyn.**

1. local ('opposite to'): *there was sene in the chircheyard ayenst the hyghe aulter a grete stone*, 40.21; *repose hym ageynst the sonne*, 370.30.

2. temporal: *Ageyne the fest of pentecost*, 159.14; *ageynst a nyghte*, 200.3; *by cause he wold not be hurte — ageynste the grete Iustes*, 377.27.

3. of opposition (*passim*).

4. of mere meeting: *the yates of heuen opened ayenst hym* (i. e., at his coming), 859.6; *he dressid hym ageynst hym* (i. e., to meet him), 715.25.<sup>1</sup> Cf. also, *soo dothe my herte lyghte ageynst hym* (i. e., lighten at his approach), 793.33.

<sup>1</sup> W. Hys wyfe was war of hys comyng,  
And ageynst hym went sche, 534.

**324. at, attē, att** (due to confusion with *atte* for *at the*. See § 92).

1. local, in the ordinary cases, and: *syr gaunter was at the erthe*, 202.23; *threwe hem oute at* (i. e., through) *a wyn-dowe*, 249.23. Cf. also, *they laid watche bothe att forestes and at alle maner of men*, 585.27.

2. Of the other uses, the most noteworthy is that with personal pronouns and proper nouns, where other prepositions have supplanted *at*: *toke his leue at the duchesse & at them al*, 264.31; *asked counceil at hem al*, 47.10;<sup>1</sup> *we wille begynne at hym*, 105.14; *would not come at hym*, 35.29 (i. e., 'to his castle,' F. chez lui); *I haue ben at kyng Ryons*, 76.27.<sup>2</sup>

3. Among the set phrases are the common *at honde* and *at leyser*, besides *at acord*, the more noticeable *at certayne* (certainly. Cf. *in certayne* in the same sense), and *att armes* (to arms! F. aux armes. See the etymology of *alarm* in *Skeat*. The phrase *unto armes* is also used). *At travers* is a rendering of F. à travers.

**325. before** (cf. *afore* and *tofore*), of precedence, in the sense of 'beyond' or 'above': *alle maner of straunge aduentures came before Arthur as at that feest before alle other feestes*, 213.10.

**326. besydes, besyde.**

The modern distinction between the two forms does not appear.

**327. betwixe, betwyx(e), betwyxte, betwixt**, of more than two: *betwixe thre knyghtes*, 232.30.

<sup>1</sup> W. I take wytnes *att gret* and *small(e)*, 637.

<sup>2</sup> "For I have ben right now *at* Deiphebus," Chaucer, *Troilus and Criseyde*, II., 1480. In the following, *at* seems to mean 'in the presence of,' and so 'on account of': *And yf hit were not at the reuerence of your hyghenes, I shold now haue ben reuenged*, 487.36.

**328. by.**

1. Besides the ordinary local uses note: *smote of bothe his legges by the knees*, 173.25; *smote hym thurgh the sheld by love of the sheeld*, 110.3; *haue brent and slayne al the peple that they may come by*, 64.7; *the teres began to renne doune by his rysage*, 622.22.

2. Temporal: *by tymes* (and *by tyme*), *by thys* ('now'), *by thenne*; and further, *by my dayes*, 842.11; *by this done he was — faynt*, 249.24; *by the space of two yere*, 604.5; and in the conjunctive phrase *by that* (§ 365).

3. of degree, in comparison: *more by a yarde*, 206.15.

4. of distribution: *by one and one*, 265.18; *red it word by word*, 457.20.<sup>1</sup>

5. 'concerning,' 'about,' etc.: *what say ye by this gest*, 204.26; *they spak alle shame by Cornysse knyghtes*, 360.1; *he spak grete tylonye by the kynge, and specially by the Quene Gueneuer*, 417.28.<sup>2</sup> An extension of this use seems to appear in the following: *here haue ye sene this day a grete myrakel by Corsabryn* (i. e., in Corsabryn's case), 489.33.

6. 'in accordance with,' 'according to': *hens wyl I neuer goo — by my wylle*, 850.26; *It semeth by yow — that ye knowe*, etc., 241.23.

7. 'on account of,' 'because of': *it may not be by no reason*, 214.35; *thou oughte — to beware by yonder knyghtes*, 237.24; *by my prowesse — a duke hath maade me knyght*, 95.7. Cf. *whereby* in the sense of *wherefore*, 297.24.

8. of personal instrumentality, passing over to the idea of agency: *had word — by the dwerf*, 233.15; *salwed yow by me*, 724.25; *she shall haue no tylony by me*, 115.14; *by me thou hast desdayne and scorene*, 727.4.

9. of agency (*passim*).

10. *by cause of* is used as a preposition.

<sup>1</sup> Bacon has the phrase "by little and little."

<sup>2</sup> "How say you by the French lord?" — *Merch. Ven.*, I. 2, 47.

11. *by meanes of* appears in various forms:*by the moyane of* (Caxton's Preface).*by the meane of* (ibid.).*by the moyne of* (ibid.).*by this meane*, 56.30.*by no meane* (adv.), 118.15.*by the meanes of*, 129.11.*by good meanes of*, 77.16.*by her meanes*, 159.34.

**329. endlong(e)** is more specific than *along*. It means 'from end to end': *drofe sir Palomydes ouer — thwart and endlonge alle the feld*, 524.16. Sometimes, however, it seems to mean no more than 'along': *he rode endlong the gates of that manoyre*, 193.16.

**330. euen longes** occurs in much the same sense as *along*: *sir palomydes sailed euen longes humber to the costes of the see*, 517.34.

**331. excepte** is common.

*Oute excepte* occurs once: *ye wolde yeue any man the yfte that he wold aske, oute excepte that were vnreasonable*, 102.10. Cf. the verb *oute cepte*: *I oute cepte hym of al knyghtes*, 539.23. In like manner the participle *oute taken* occurs once: *oute taken my lady your quene she is makeles*, 540.26, and the verb *oute take* once: *of alle knyghtes I oute take none*, 542.19.

**332. for.**

1. Temporal: *for thenne*.

2. 'in respect of': *that shall not ye knowe for me*, 216.5 (i. e., so far as I am concerned); *so the strokes ben on hit as I foud hit, and neuer shalle be amendyd for me*, 339.2. This is probably the force of *for* in the obscure phrase: *in al — dedes of armes both for lyf and deth*, 183.9.

Here too seems to belong the phrase *here is for me*, used apparently to indicate readiness: *As for that sayd Dynadan make the redy, for here is for me*, 506.2.

3. *for* is used to establish a sort of apposition, where modern usage has either *for* or *as* and either preposition is logically expletive: *he wyllle knowe me for his better*, 217.10; *wel knowen — for noble knyghtes*, 252.5; *this was taken — for a myracle*, 716.12. Similar is the use — *was fedde — for almesse*, 221.25.

4. 'for the sake of' (*passim*).

5. 'on account of': *for dredde of god*, 198.7; *he durst nowhere ryde nor goo for hym*, 155.27; *I may not — saue thy lyf, for the shameful dethe that thou hast caused*, 239.34. This use of *for* is the base of the conjunctive phrase *not for thenne*.

(a) A slight extension of this use appears in the following: *And yf thou be ouercome, thou shalt not be quyte for losyng of any of thy membrys, but thou shalt be shamed for euer*, 649.33. The same phrase occurs two pages beyond (651.11) with the preposition *by*.

(b) The use of *for* in the sense of 'against,' of remedies, etc. (Lat. *contra*), may be derived from this sense. Cf. *she lapped the chyld as wel as she myght for cold*, 274.18.

6. 'in spite of': *I wyllle — assaye hym for alle his pryde*, 202.14; *for al your boost they lye in the dust*, 228.5; *many knyghtes — ouermatched syr gawayne for alle the thryes myghte that he had*, 143.25; *this child wyllle not laboure for me for any thyng that — I may doo*, 102.21; *I wyll accomplysshe my message for al your ferdful wordes*, 167.30.<sup>1</sup>

7. reciprocal and distributive, 'in return,' 'over against': *playne bataille hande for hand*, 250.34; *there mette two for two*, 48.24; *there was not one for one that slewe hym* (i. e., it

<sup>1</sup> W. Thou schalt helpe to dyght thys lyne  
For all thy fers(e) fare, 323.



was not a fair fight), 522.2. This seems to be the force of *for* in the following: *knyghtes of the moost noble prowesse in the world for to accompte soo many for soo many*, 383.9.

8. with the infinitive (see § 238).

**333. from** and *fro* are both common, and are used without distinction. The idea of separation is quite as distinct as the idea of source; thus, *he sawe his peple so shayn from hym*, 846.17. In fact, *from* is commonly used in the sense of 'away from,' 'off,' etc.: *halpe hym fro his hors*, 217.30; *god wold that ye shold put hym from me*, 221.29; *the dwerf was gladd the ryng was from hym*, 262.12 (i. e., was off his hand, out of his possession).

**froward.** The adverb *froward* occurs in the phrase *toward and froward*: *he rode many Iourneyes bothe toward and froward*, 634.20. The preposition is used in the sense of 'from' or 'away from': *cam froward Camelot*, 116.22 ('from'); *on the ferther syde of the hors froward the knyghte*, 209.21 ('away from'); So — *Kynge marke rode froward them*, 430.34.

### 334. in.

1. local and temporal: *in every day*, 500.1; *borne* ('born') *in may day*, 75.13; and for *on*: *felle in a dedely swoone in the flore*, 249.26; *made a crosse in his forhede*, 710.24.

2. for *into*: *there came neuer a better in my hand*, 204.25; *entred the sone of god in the wombe of a mayd*, 703.9; *fallen in despair*, 723.34.<sup>1</sup>

3. for other prepositions: *syre Marhaus abode in the see* ('at,' 'by,' or 'on'), 278.24; *Thenne came syre Breunor — wyth his lady in his hand muffed* (i. e., he led her in by the hand), 311.16; *in god is al* (i. e., with, in the power of), 289.6.

4. of title and ownership: *wherin I am entytled*, 162.15; *to take possession in thempyre*, 162.19.

<sup>1</sup> W. If eny morcell come in thy throte, 494.

5. *in* seems to be used of purpose in the following: *charged hym in remyssyon of his synnes to haste hym*, etc., 856.28 ('for the remission'?). *in* may, however, be used here like *on* in phrases of charge, asseveration, etc.<sup>1</sup> Cf. also: *doo bataille in the ryght of you and your land*, 278.8.

6. *In* for *on* (*a-*): In the phrase *in lyke hard* (*soo they held the Journey* ('fought throughout the day') *eueryche in lyke hard*, 704.35), *in lyke* is equivalent to *on lyke*, *alike* (see § 340, and *a*). Thus the meaning is 'equally hard,' 'with equal vigour.' So also: *syr Tristram foughte styлле in lyke hard*, 610.18; *all he louth in lyke moche*, 751.34; *syxe Inches depe and in lyke longe*, 770.15. As in the corresponding use of *on* (*a-*), the preposition is sometimes dropped: *helde the bataill all that daye lyke hard*, 58.13; *syr launcelot held alwey the stoure lyke hard*, 394.1. Cf. also *in doune* ('adown, down') in the following: *they hewe so fast — that they cutte in doune half their swordes*, 444.12.<sup>2</sup>

7. The commonest set phrases are *in certayn(e)* ('certainly'; so *at certayne*, which, however, means rather 'certain'), *in especyal*, *in lyke wyse*, *in close* ('secret'), *in one* ('together, at once'): *euery in one sir Agraayne and sir Mordred cryed*, 801.10. *In that entent* occurs beside the more common *to that entente*. *In handes* means 'at close quarters': *ynnethe he myght putte upon hym his helme and take his hors but they were in handes with hym*, 384.19.

8. *in to*, always printed as two words, is used sometimes where *in* is usual: *alyghte in to the ship*, 699.2; *arryued in to the Ilond* (Caxton's Rubric, 14.34); *the queene despoyled in to her smok*, 810.30.

<sup>1</sup> This supposition has additional warrant from the following case in W.:

Haue yt *in* godes blessing and myne, 362.

<sup>2</sup> W. uses *in* still more freely in such phrases: *in hie* (179), *in same* (602), *in lond* (475).

**335. longe on** (*longe vpon*), 'on account of,' 'owing to': *that is longe on your synne*, 657.35; *alle was long vpon two unhappy knyghtes*, 797.10.<sup>1</sup>

**336. maugre**, *magre*, *maulgre*, occurs most commonly in the phrase *maugre thy (his, her) hede*. The noun *maugre* occurs twice: *ye shalle haue — loue and thanke where other shalle haue maugre*, 807.10. Cf. 405.28. The phrase *maulgre of them al*, 744.12, is perhaps an echo of the transitional form (i. e., *in maugre*, etc.). *Maugre* with the genitive occurs once: *maulgre sir mordreds*, 841.16.

**337. nere** is ordinarily confined to the adverbial use. The phrase *nere hand(e)*, commonly adverbial, is used rarely as a preposition: *nere hand her*, 773.7.

### 338. of.

1. *Of* is not distinguished in spelling from its adverbial base *of* ('off').

2. Besides its ordinary local uses, *of* has also the sense of *on*: *trauercyd for to be of bothe handes of sire la cote male taylc*, 350.4 (i. e., on both sides of); and in the sense of 'off,' 'from' (cf. 1): *the lady of the lake took up her heed and henge it vp by the hayre of ('from') her sadel bowe*, 362.19.

3. *Of* is used temporally, in the sense of 'during': *of al that day he had but lytel rest*, 263.21; *blynd of long tyme*, 715.24; *the truage — was behynde of seuen yere*, 278.26; *of alle that quarter of sommer syr Tristram coude neuer mete with sir palomydes*, 570.10; *he — had tasted none other mete of a grete whyle*, 668.18. This use may explain *of* in the following: *he loued the queene — aboue al other ladyes damoyseles of his lyf*, 183.17.

4. Of separation, with verbs of depriving, delivering, etc., in the sense of 'out of,' 'from,' etc.: *wonne the feld of*

<sup>1</sup> "I can nat telle where *on* it was long." — C. T., G. 930.

*this knyghte*, 134.13; *Gaherys — wanne his lady of hym*, 368.15 (cf. the modern vulgarism "I won it off him"); *rescowed of the theues*, 219.37; *it is no good knyghtes parte to lette hym of his worship*, 260.26; *staunched of his bledynge*, 250.4; *ye maye drawe oute the sowles of erthely payne*, 716.29.

A rarer use appears in the following: *awoke of his swoun*, 811.32; *bad them seace of their bataille*, 413.29.

5. Of source, in various relations usually expressed by *from*.

(a) of descent: *thou arte come of men of worship*, 214.10; *broder into syr Gawayn of fader and moder*, 218.22.

(b) of feudal tenure: *knyghtes that hold of me*, 224.20.

(c) in other relations: *loue muste aryse of the herte*, 762.20; *oure kyng brought vp of children two men*, 518.32; *many ther were that kyng Arthur had made vp of nought*, 840.26; *that was of his grete gentylnes*, 215.16; *dame Lyones desyred of the kyng that*, etc., 271.29; *as is of record*, 160.16.

(d) shading into the idea of agency: *she hadde children of kyng Melyodas*, 275.6; *alle the chere that myghte be done bothe of the kyng and of many other kynges*, 268.37; *neue ere had I suche a stroke of mans hand*, 690.1; *I compte me neuer the wers knyght for a falle of sir Bleoberys*, 342.12; *this is a grete despyte of* ('from') *a Sarasyn*, 487.6; *and they fayle of the Sangreal hit is in waste* ('time thrown away') of ('on the part of') *alle the remenaunt to recouer hit*, 665.11; *of no leche she coude haue no remedye*, 705.16.

6. of agency: *he was honoured of hye and lowe*, 212.30; *of hym I wil be made knyght and els of none*, 216.27; *This is wel said of* ('by') *you*, 254.9; *I wille not be knowen of neyther more ne lesse*, 257.25.

7. of instrument, means, etc.: *were fedde of the holy sangreal* (Caxton's Rubric), 30.2; *dye of my hand*, 168.6.

## 8. of cause.

(a) literally, 'from,' 'on account of': *I fele myself — sore brysed of the dedes of yesterday*, 543.20; *of that stroke syr Blamor felle to the erthe*, 259.30; *stonyed of the dethe of this fair lady*, 107.22; *I shal dye of the hyrthe of the*, 274.13; *my moder dyed of me*, 291.4; *he shalle neuer fayle of shame*, 693.2 (where the meaning is 'on account of shame').

(1) This use seems to explain the meaning borne by the phrase *for the loue of* in the following: *destroyed her self for the loue of his deth*, 82.30; *thus was al the Courte troubled for the loue of the departycyon of tho knyghtes*, 621.25.

(2) *of* in this sense appears frequently with adjectives and participles: *barwy of the grece*, 218.36; *dede of oldenes*, 715.33; *I am loth — of that gyfte I haue gyuen yow*, 112.6; *they were sory of his felauship*, 428.6 (cf. mod. E. 'glad of his company'); *heuy of it*, 713.22; *fayne of his comynge*, 211.28<sup>1</sup>; *I am — agreued of your greuaunce*, 205.16; *made alle the see reed of his blood*, 165.18.

(3) Similar are the common collocations *joye of* and *pyte of*: *they made grete Joye of hem*, 705.10; *hit was grete pyte of her dethe*, 709.4.

(b) metaphorically, 'in accordance with,' 'according to': *promyse me of your curtosy — to cause hym to be made knyghte*, 189.29; *syn that ye — requyre me of knyghthode to helpe yow*, 208.25; *they — requyred hym of his good grace to be of good comforte*, 268.9.

(c) Hence 'in return for,' etc.: *make her amendys of al the trespas*, 240.29. It is doubtful whether the common *thanked — of* belongs here or under 9.

(1) Very similar is *of* meaning 'for the sake of': *prayd hym of felauship that was bitwene them to telle hym*, 721.13.

<sup>1</sup> W. Ther-*of* was he fulle blythe, 636.

9. *Of* is very commonly used in the sense of 'concerning,' 'about,' 'in respect of': *kyng Marke was behynde of the truage*, 277.24; *he asked the dwerf of best counceil*, 263.7; *I kepe ('care') nomore of the dwerf*, 245.11; *al men wondrous of the noblesse of syr launcelot*, 261.11; *I merucyle of the*, 405.19; *by hym that passeth of bounte and of knyghthode al them*, etc., 716.22; *to telle the trouthe of his quest*, 117.24; *remembre of this unstable world*, 723.23; *he remembryd of wyles and treason*, 495.33; *Syr Persant is — no thyng of myzte nor strength*, 229.15.

(a) Here belong probably the following common collocations: *reuenge you of the dethe of syr Gawayn*, 852.28; *he — prayd them of foryeuenes*, 251.19; *they — praid the lord of the castel of herburgh*, 427.19; *he cryed hem mercy of that he had done to them*, 722.17; and perhaps also, *that knyghte — requyred hym of Iustes*, 377.13.<sup>1</sup> Cf. also: *ye haue rescowed me of my lyf*, 414.13; *I shalle helpe yow — of an hors*, 642.4; *he serched his body of other thre woundes*, 795.2.

(b) Here also belong many *of*-phrases after adjectives: *true of*, *fals of*, *noble of*, *wyse of*, *myghty of*, etc.; e. g., *feble of good hyleue*, 663.29.<sup>2</sup>

10. Hence *of* is used to mean 'considering,' 'taking into account': *wel made of his yeres*, 102.28; *that was a myghty stroke of ('for') a yonge knyght*, 106.24 (i. e., considering his youth); *a worshipful knyghte — of his yeres*, 252.29; *of a synner erthely thow hast no pierc*, 660.23.

11. *Of* is partitive in the following: *they were served of al wyynes and metes*, 126.7; *gyue hym of al maner of metes*, 214.20; *serue hym of the wyn*,<sup>3</sup> 271.8; *take with you of the blood*, 720.6; *salewe my lorde sir launcelot my fader and of*

<sup>1</sup> W. *beseke her of grace*, 101.

*Of mete and drynke he gan her pray*, 206.

*Of thy garlond wondyr I haue*, 263.

<sup>2</sup> W. *meke of maners*, 35.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *serued with fysshe*, 491.14.

*hem of the round table*, 720.32. This last seems either a misprint or a Gallicism. In fact, this construction is quite possibly kept alive by French influence.

12. *Of*-phrases corresponding to the genitive of material (source), 'accompaniment,' 'characteristic,' etc.: *made a kechyn knaue of hym*, 252.25; *garnysshed of leues*, 641.28; *be ye of good chere*, 255.12.

13. *Of*-phrases corresponding to the genitive of measure: *two flagans — they ar of two galons*, 234.7; *a faire douzter of .xviij yere of age*, 231.13.

14. *Of* with verbs. See also 4 and 9.

(a) *Of* is used partitively after verbs of serving, supplying, etc. (11).

(b) *Of* is used with many derivatives from French verbs followed by *de*: *I medle not of their maters*, 512.29 (se mesler *de*, *Cotgrave*); *sir Mador appeled the quene of the dethe of his cosyn*, 729.16.

(c) *Of* occurs frequently after impersonal verbs: *me forthynketh of the dethe of your doughter*, 713.23.

### 339. *on*.

1. *on* is adverbial in the combination *sought on*, which seems to have about the force of G. *versuchen*, 'to tempt': *he is — ful lothe to fyghte with ony man, but yf he be sore sougt on*, 115.35; *Syr Mordred sought on quene Guenever — for to haue hir to come oute*, 840.14.

2. *on* is used in senses proper to *of*.

(a) 'concerning,' 'about,' etc.: *thynke on Ioye*, 692.29; *he sayth wronge on me*, 210.14; *he seith not ryght on me*, 138.25 (cf. mod. E. 'tell on me'); *all men wondrous on hym*, 272.4; *that was wel preued on many*, 183.7<sup>1</sup> (i. e., in the case of many).

<sup>1</sup> "I am glad *on't*." — *Jul. Caes.*, I. 3, 137. Cf. *Abbott*, 181, 182.

(b) 'on account of': *I am smyten vpon thold wounde — on the whiche I fele wel I must dye*,<sup>1</sup> 841.34.

3. *On* is used in phrases of charge and asseveration: *on my lyf*, 187.18; *on thy knyghthode*, 205.27.

4. *On* is used of opposition ('against'): *leyd syege on the castel*, 64.8; *he rode on kyng Nentres*, 54.13; *on hym knyghtes wyllc be bolde*, 201.31.

5. *On* is used in senses proper to several other prepositions.

(a) 'over': *tary on the foote men*, 60.3; *regned on vs*, 161.27.

(b) 'in': *wherfor trovest thou more on thy harneis than in thy maker*, 710.18.

(c) 'to': *cryed on syre launcelot*, 198.25.

6. Among the set phrases are *on hand*, *on euen handes* (of a "drawn" battle), *on my costes* ('at my expense'), *on a daye* ('on a certain day'), *on a tyme* ('once upon a time').

### 340. Adverbial phrases with *on* and *a*.

With regard to these phrases in Shakspeare, Abbott remarks: "In these adverbs the *a*- represents some preposition, as 'in,' 'on,' 'of,' &c., contracted by rapidity of pronunciation," Abbott, 24. The actual transition, and the exact form of the earlier and later stages of most of these

<sup>1</sup> "lest more mischance *on* plots and errors happen."

— *Ham.*, V. 2, 406.

"She's wandering to the tower

*On* pure heart's love to greet the tender princes."

— *Rich. III.*, IV. 1, 4 (Abbott).

*On* seems to mean 'from' in the following: *yonder is a fayre shadowe. There maye we reste vs on oure horses*, 183.28 (whereat they immediately got *off* their horses to rest). There are no parallel cases; but cf. 354, 3, d.



common phrases, is abundantly exemplified in the *Morte d'Arthur*.<sup>1</sup> Thus we have the parallel forms:

*aback* — *on bak*.  
*a foote* —  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{on foote.} \\ \textit{on his foote.} \end{array} \right.$   
*a fore* — *on fore*.  
*a loude* — *on loude*.  
*a lyue* — *on lyue*.  
*a parte* — *on parte*.  
*a slepe* — *on slepe*.  
*a sondre* — *in sondre*.  
*a two* — *in two*.

Furthermore we find *on lofte* ('aloft'), *on syde* ('aside'), *on blood* (*his nose braste oute on blood*, 192.4), and *on day* (cf. *now adayes*, 771.28): *on day* ('at daybreak') *cam Merlyn*, 37.20.

(a) The base in each of these cases is, as Mr. Abbott suggests, either a noun or an adjective used as a noun. Thus the same construction appears in: *grete Iustes doon alle a crystemasse* (Caxton's Rubric, 31.20); *they — helde landes of arthur a this half the see*, 499.25; *he wold ryde on pylgremage*, 166.35. Here also belongs probably the common phrase *that day a twelue moneth* (i. e., that day in twelve months), 253.10, which usually omits the *a*: *this day twelue moneth*, 214.2. Cf. § 334, 6.

(b) Such phrases, when formed with verbal nouns, gave rise to the later forms (a-hunting, a-fishing, etc.), and subsequently to the anomalous modern forms with verbs (a-float, a-swim, etc.). The *Morte d'Arthur* shows *on slumberyng*, *on bledyng*, *on huntynge*, *on mayeng*, etc. The corresponding forms with *a* are rare (*a dayng*, 84.13, 389.7).

<sup>1</sup> It is not to be assumed, however, in every case that the form with *on* is earlier than the form with *a*.

(c) The confusion of this prepositional *a-* with the intensive *a-* from A. S. *of-*, which is noted by Abbott (24.3), appears rarely: *the quene was an angred*, 737.23 (cf. *an hungered*, S. Matt., xxv. 44).

**341. only** ('except') is rare: *there were all the knyghtes of the round table only tho that were prysoners or slayn*, 213.19.

**342. or** ('ere'): *never or this tyme*, 225.15.

**343. oute of** occurs in the sense of 'beyond': *good* ('goods') *oute of nombre*, 168.28; *they be oute of nombre* ('numberless'), 179.7; *grete strokes oute of al mesure*, 172.22.

**344. ouerthwart(e)** is (a) adjective: *ye are — passyng ouerthwarte of your tonge*, 359.25; (b) noun: *at an ouerthwart*, 239.14; (c) adverb: *lyfte upon hym ouerthwart*, 230.33; (d) preposition: *layd the naked swerd ouerthwart bothe their throtes*, 151.13.

1. *thwart* occurs (rarely): *smote Arthur thwart the rysage*, 173.37.

**345. sauf, saue**: *armed al sauf the hedes*, 199.2. *sauyng* to occurs at 176.7: *withoute any man sauynge to a page*.

**346. syn<sup>1</sup>**: *syn the dethe of kyng Vther*, 44.6. The adverbial forms are *sythen*, *sythe*, and *syn*.

**347. thorou** (*thorowe*, *thurgh*, *thorou oute*, *thurgh oute*, *thorough oute*) has the ordinary local and temporal uses, and the common meaning 'by means of.' At 116.10 it seems to mean 'on account of' (result): *myn arme is oute of lythe wher thorow I must nedes reste me*.

**348. to.**

1. *To* shows occasionally its original adverbial force: *or* ('ere') *it be long to*, 152.5.

<sup>1</sup> W. *synth*: *synth* yesterdaye, 257; *Synth* the tyme I sawe you last, 428.

2. Local, in senses since supplied by other prepositions: *leid* — *a salve to hym*, 255.15; *stroke* ('struck') *to the other two bretheren*, 203.11; *put the pomels of theire swerdes to the knyght*, 155.7.

3. Temporal, in the common phrases *to nyght*, *to morowe*, *to morne*, and in: *two monethes was to the daye that the turnement shold be*, 256.6.

4. *To* is used of extent, limit, etc.

(a) literally: *to the mountenance of an houre*, 217.33; *a coronal of gold besette with stones of vertue to the value of a thousand pound*, 254.30; *your bounte and hyghenes may no man preyse half to the valewe*, 78.33; *to the somme of XXX*, 65.26.

(b) metaphorically: *to my power*, 94.29 (i. e., to the best of my ability); *to my wetyng*, 691.38 (i. e., to my knowledge, so far as I know); *slayne — to my dethe*, 520.11.

5. Hence *to* is used in phrases of comparison: *there myghte none cast barre nor stone to hym by two yerdys*, 215.25; *these ben but Iapes to that* ('what') *he shalle doo*, 113.12.

6. The ancient *to* of purpose, as with the infinitive, appears in phrases where *to* has the sense of 'for,' 'as': *whyche thou wylt haue to thy peramour*, 187.9; *she hadde a passyng fair old knyght to her husband*, 112.28 (cf. the surviving 'take to wife'); *I sende her hym to a presente* (cf. mod. E. 'to boot'), 135.25. Cf. *to thys entent*, 232.17.

7. *To* is used with pronouns and names of persons somewhat like *at* (§ 324, 2): *goo in to another*, 714.3 (i. e., to another man's castle).

8. *To* occurs in various senses since supplied by other prepositions.

(a) 'for': *al — shall be to your worship*, 250.3; *and the kyng — made grete prouysyon to that turnement*, 255.4; *make a couerynge to the shyp*, 698.13; *make newe gyrdels to the suerd*, 699.23; *to his helpe I wylle doo my power*, 206.3; *made hym redy to that turnement*, 258.6. Cf. 6.

(b) 'according to': *worshypped to his ryghte*, 719.38. The idea of limit, of the point up to which, may be latent here. Cf. 4.

(c) 'into': *felle to grete goodnesse*, 211.24.

(d) *Obeded to*, 162.33, is probably after the analogy of 'obedient to.'

(e) *To* of direction is used of feeling, much like 'toward': *a preynt hate — to syr launcelot*, 797.13. Cf. § 352.4.

9. Furthermore, *to* is used in the sense of 'against': *warre maad to kyng Arthur* (Caxton's Rubric), 4.26; *I shalle make warre to the*, 817.6; *yf euer I trespased to them*, 563.18. Here seems to belong the following also: *the cowardyse that is named to the knyghtes of Cornewaille*, 374.6.<sup>1</sup>

**349. tofore** (cf. *afore*, *before*). The adverb has also the form *to forne*.

**350. toward** (see *-ward*, § 52, f) occurs as an adverb: *he rode — bothe toward and froward*, 634.21.

2. *Toward* has occasional tmesis: *to the world ward*, 720.19; *to me ward*, 294.26.

3. *Toward* occurs in the sense of 'for,' 'on behalf of': *I shalle ensure the neuer to werre ageynst thy lady but be alwey toward her*, 675.33.

**351. tyl**, *tylle* is used not only of tyme, but also (rarely) of place: *ledde hym tyl a caue*, 716.24; *teyed his hors til a tre*, 380.9 (cf. *yntyl*).

**352. vnto**.

1. local: <sup>2</sup>

(a) 'as far as': *the kyng of Bretayn and all the lordshippes vnto Rome*, 273.15.

<sup>1</sup> W. shows a use of *to* not paralleled in the *Morte d'Arthur*: *therto hadde sche nede*, 504.

<sup>2</sup> *Vnto* appears once in W. as an adverb: *Howe cam thys vn-to?* 549.

(b) 'on': *there was wryten vnto the tombe that Quene Gueneuer*, etc., 738.3.

(c) 'at': *the fygge tree vnto Iherusalem*, 641.30.

(d) 'toward,' 'at': *smote a sore stroke vnto syr Raynold*, 203.10 (so *to*, cf. 3).

2. temporal, in the conjunctive phrase *vnto the tyme that*.

3. in many of the uses of *to* (q. v.) 'for': *redy vnto bataylle*, 206.18; 'for,' 'as': *hath — noble knyghtes vnto his kynne*, 387.33; 'in comparison with': *lyke to conquere alle the world; for vnto his courage it is to lytel*, 163.10; *syr Persant is no thyng of myste — vnto the knyghte that*, etc., 229.15.

So also, *strake one vnto the dethe*, 219.21; *trust vnto my promyse*, 246.29; *obeye now vnto hym*, 245.19 (cf. § 348.8, d); and *he resembled moche vnto sire launcelot*, 617.6.

4. In like manner *vnto* is used to denote the direction of feeling, much like 'toward': *syre Tristram had no Ioye of her letters nor regard vnto her*, 279.34; *Yf there be ony man that I haue offended vnto*, 292.19; *they alle had suspencion vnto her*, 729.6; *sir mordred had — a prcuy hate vnto the Quene*, 797.12 (cf. § 348.8, e).<sup>1</sup>

**353. vntyl** is local as well as temporal, and the local use is more frequent than that of *tyl*: *vntyl his owne hors*, 188.21; *vn tyl an ermyte*, 72.30; *ranne vntyl hym*, 847.7.<sup>2</sup>

#### 354. vpon.

1. Chaucer's *vp* occurs, but very rarely: *as I rode vp myn adventures*, 414.30; *sire percyual tooke the knyghtes hors and made sire percydes to mounte vp hym*, 589.37.

2. *Vpon* temporal occurs in the phrases *vpon that* ('there-upon'), 620.1, and *vpon a day* ('once upon a time'), 693.13.

<sup>1</sup> *Vnto* means 'in,' 'with regard to,' in: *fortunate vnto the werryys*, 198.9; and 'of,' 'at the hands of,' in: *I haue yll deserued it vnto hym*, 86.22.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. W. The lady spake the wyfe *vn-tylle*, 583.

3. *Vpon* is used in many senses of *on*: *vpon her party* ('on her side'), 257.14; *to doo suche cost vpon hym*, 214.22; *reucngyd vpon hym*, 846.32; especially in the following senses:

(a) in the sense of opposition: *dyd many bataylles vpon the myscreantes*, 860.38; *lauded vpon them*, 842.33; *hys enemyes Vsurpped vpon hym and dyd a grete bataylle vpon his men*, 39.12.<sup>1</sup>

(b) in phrases of charge and asseveration: *vpon payne of dethe*, 202.29; *vpon my peryl*, 216.22; *vpon his blessynge*, 231.15; *vpon payne of myn hede*, 339.37.<sup>2</sup>

(c) in the sense of 'concerning': *wel hywaryd vpon hym*, 246.18; *syr Beaumayns bethoughte hym vpon the knyghtes*, 239.31; *wondre ye not soo vpon sire Palomydes*, 544.6. In the following *vpon* may mean either 'concerning' or 'directed toward': *the noyse ('outcry') shall be lefte that is now vpon hym*, 544.11.<sup>3</sup>

(d) Cf. also the following: *his woundes renewed vpon bledynge*, 790.22; *he trusteth — vpon his handes*, 809.9; *thou saist hit vpon pryde of that good knyghte that is there with the*, 379.15; *a noble swerd that — syre Gryngamors fader wanne*

<sup>1</sup> "But did *usurpe* with wrong and tyrannie  
*Vpon* the sceptre which she now did hold."

— *Faerie Queene*, I, 4. 12.

<sup>2</sup> "And Arcite is exyled *vpon* his heed."

— C. T., 1344. (A).

"Namore, *up* peyne of lesing of your heed."

— C. T., 1707. (A).

<sup>3</sup> *Vpon* means 'to the decision of' in the following: *lete vs put it bothe vpon hym*, 146.19. This may be a metaphorical application of the preposition. The mod. E. phrase is "I put it to you."

The phrase *besy vpon*, in Caxton's Rubric, seems to have the idea of insistence conveyed in the mod. E. phrase "kept at him": *syr Agrawayn and syr mordred were besy vpon syr Gawayn for to disclose*, etc., 32.23 (i. e., were urging him to disclose).

vpon an hethen Tyraunt, 258.5 (see § 339.2, b, foot-note; and longe on, § 335).

### 355. with.

1. *With* is temporal in certain set phrases: *wyth that, with these wordes, forthe with al, ryght ther with al, anone with al*, etc. The underlying idea of accompaniment is plain.

2. *With* of instrument needs no exemplification. There seems, however, to be an extension of this use to the idea of means in Caxton's Rubric, 22.16: *How syr Dynadan mette with syr Trystram, and wyth Iustyng wyth syr Palamydes syr Dynadan knewe hym*.<sup>1</sup>

3. *With* is used of agency: *ouercome with a symplyer knyghte*, 198.10; *distressid — with a fals knyghte*, 193.9; *tempted — with a feude*, 695.5; *bysegged with a tyraunte*, 215.38; *best byloued with this lady*, 260.29; *eten with wylde beestes*, 652.27; *bitrayed with his wyf*, 793.16; *a valeye closed with a rennyng water*, 690.27 (of inanimate agency).

4. Thus with inanimate or abstract things *with* is sometimes used to denote the cause: *there with the kyng was angry*, 698.8.

5. *With* of accompaniment appears in various connections, literal and metaphorical: *that nyght were the thre felawes easyd with the best*, 705.31; *lete in with torche lyghte*, 153.26; *lyue with fastyng*, 850.24; *suche shame I had with the thre bretheren*, 702.5 ('among' the brethren, or possibly 'from'); *he was helyd hard with the lyf*, 218.30; *And yf I myght with my worship, I wold not haue a doo with yow*, 202.37. So in the common phrases *with wronge* ('wrongfully'), *marye with*, and probably *match with*, though the idea here may be rather 'pit against.' Cf. also: *what wold ye with the best* ('beast'), 65.37; *he asked — what tydynge were with hem*, 462.16.

<sup>1</sup> W. My lyfe ther-wyth ('thereby') to lede, 507.

6. *With* in the sense of against (O. E. *wip*) needs no exemplification.

7. *With* occurs rarely in the sense of *by* in charges: *ye charge me with a grete thyng* (i. e., his knightly faith), 298.18.

8. In anastrophe the adverbial form *withal* is used: *the hyggest man that euer I mette with al*, 194.16; *ȝpon them that I had adoo with al*, 229.33; *thou shalt anon be met with al*, 219.12.

9. *With* has conditional force in the conjunctive phrase *with that* (see § 398), but the base idea is accompaniment.

### 356. within.

1. *Within* temporal is most common in the phrase *within a whyle*.

2. Ellipsis of something implied seems to explain the use of *within* with personal pronouns and nouns of person: *the whyche cyte was within kyng* *Vryens*, 64.2 (i. e., within the domain of). Other cases show a close likeness to the F. use of *chez*: *the same knyght was within hym* ('within his house'), 399.25 (cf. §§ 324.2, 348.7); *ones I had syr Gawayne within me*, 207.12 ('within my power?'); *soo shal I come withynne her to cause her to cherysshe me*, 149.18 ('into her favour?').

---

## CONJUNCTIONS.

---

**357. also**, in addition to its frequent use with *and*, occurs frequently as an introductory conjunction.

### 358. and.

1. simple copulative (*passim*).

2. So loose is the coördination at times that the *and* is practically expletive: *In the name of Ihesu Cryste*, and *praye*



*you that ye gyrd yow, etc.*, 700.6; *goo ye hens where ye hope best to doo and as I bad yow*, 720.24.

3. conditional (*passim*): *and ye wyll be reulyd by me, I shal help you*, 187.24.

### 359. as.

1. The simple modal use (*as we demed*, 199.20) is common in phrases of asseveration: *as I am true knyght*, 188.17; sometimes with the added idea of proportion: *as ye wyll haue my helpe, lete me alone with hem*, 200.26.

(a) *as that*<sup>1</sup> is used (rarely) in the same sense: *she praide me as that I loued her hertely that I wold make, etc.*, 240.2.

2. modal, *as* — *as* (*passim*). The disjunction is often loose. Thus:

(a) the former *as* is often omitted: *spored their horses myghtely as the horses myzte renne*, 60.33.

3. modal, *suche* (*so*) — *as* (*passim*).

(a) latter *as* omitted: *thow arte not so old of yeres to knowe my fader*, 66.29; *in suche a plyte to gete my soule hel*, 854.14. This ellipsis occurs quite regularly before an infinitive. Cf. §§ 249, 385.4.

4. The same modal idea is expressed by *lyke as*: *lyke as he dyd yerly*, 215.29.

5. Of condition contrary to fact ('as if'): *it ferd under hym as the erthe had quaked*, 206.27; *laye as he had ben dede*, 248.14.

(a) *as though* is used in the same sense: *she souned as though she wold dye*, 209.30; *he ferd as though he myght not goo*, 213.27. *As yf* does not occur.

(b) *lyke as* is used, more rarely, in the same sense: *he unlaced his helme lyke as he wold slee hym*, 224.12; *lay there — lyke as she had ben dede*, 268.15.

<sup>1</sup> For all compound conjunctive forms made with the relative *that* cf. also § 388.4.

## 6. temporal.

(a) 'when,' 'while': *as these queenes loked — they knewe*, etc., 186.10; *as he paste beyonde*, 208.9.

(b) 'when,' 'after': *as he had ryden long — he mette*, etc., 184.28.

7. causal: *by cause we understande — and as we knowe wel*, etc., 187.2; *as I here say that the turnement shal be here — ye shal sende unto me thre knyghtes*, 190.32.

8. *As* is added to demonstratives to make relatives: *that as* ('what'), *there as* ('where'). Similarly *as* is added to the interrogative *whether*, to make a relative: *I take no force, but whether as hym lyst hym self*, 230.15 (i. e., whichever he likes). Cf. §§ 64, b; 69.

(a) The relative force of *as* appears in the construction with *same*, etc.: *that same day as he departed*, 253.21.

9. *As* is expletive in many common phrases:

(a) in the familiar *as for*: *as for syr kay, we chased hym hyder*, 200.35; *as for my ladyes name, that shall not ye knowe*, 216.5.

(b) in other cases of kindred meaning: *as touchynge syre Gawayn*, 215.13; *And as unto syr Lyonel and Ector de marys he prayeth yow to abyde hym*, 196.21; *they had not their ententes neyther with other as in her delytes*, 247.26; *for as by oure aduys the kynge shal sende*, etc., 254.4; *she had holpen hem as in straunge aduëntures*, 706.25.

(c) in expressions of time, like Chaucer's *as nowthe* and mod. E. *as yet*: *as yet thou shalt not haue*, etc., 242.4; *for as at this tyme I must ryde*, 196.9; *alle maner of straunge aduëntures came before Arthur as at that feest*, 213.10; *fyghte as to morne with syre Mordred*, 844.27.

**360. bothe — and.**

The following common cases show an irregular correlation in which *bothe* is used much like 'besides,' 'also': *whan the mayde was horsed and he bothe*, 691.1; *unto my*

grete damage and his bothe, 134.9; *I am sore hurte and he bothe*, 134.10; *serche his woundes and Accolons bothe*, 135.19. Other cases of irregular correlation are due to the loose sentence structure: *ye haue bothe saued me and my hors*, 195.27.

### 361. but.

1. negative conditional ('unless'): *but syre launcelot helpe us we may neuer be delyuerd*, 185.33; *wylle not be ouermatched — but ye ouermatche hym*, 193.3; *gretely my consayte fayleth me, but thou shalt preue a man of ryghte grete worship*, 214.11 (i. e., if — not); *no knyght founde suche tokens but he were a good lyuer*, 124.37; *hit is no reson to fyghte with me but I telle you my name*, 505.16.<sup>1</sup>

(a) *but yf* is used frequently in the same sense: *ryde not after syr Gryngamor but yf ye owe hym good will*, 244.8; *and but yf I come ageyn wythin xv dayes, than take your shyppes — & departe*, 853.30.

(b) *but so that*, in the following: *I will not take your yeldyng vnto me, but so that ye wylle yelde you vnto syr kay*, 200.32, may mean *unless*, but it is probably best explained as meaning 'except on condition that,' with *but* as a preposition and *so* used in its conditional sense (see *so*).

2. negative relative, after a negative main clause: *I haue no thyng do but I wille auowe*, 250.2.

(a) Usually, however, a pronoun subject or object appears in the relative clause: *ther is no knyght lyuyng but I am able ynough for hym*, 230.10; *he fond no gate nor dore but it was open*, 710.27; *there was none of these other knyghtes but they redde in bookes*, 856.20.

<sup>1</sup> W. That he no where myght owte wyne  
But helpe to hym were brought, 194.  
Mete ne drynke ne getyst thou none  
Butt thou wylt swete or swynke, 212.

(b) The following cases seem to be extensions of the foregoing construction, though the idea of result is suggested: *Merlyn lete make there a bedde, that ther shold neuer man lye therin but he wente oute of his wytte*, 99.2; *Thus was he swerd proued that none ne drewe it but he were dede or maymed*, 693.32 ('without going mad,' 'without being killed or wounded'). That this construction was confused with the conditional, appears in the following: *ther shalle neuer none sytte in that syege but one but yf he be destroyed*, 571.11.

(c) The *but* is omitted at 704.33: *there was none that saw hym they wend he had ben none erthely man*.

3. in negative clauses of result, after a negative main clause with *so*, *suche*, etc.: *not soo hardy — but thou saue hym*, 227.15; *This counceil was not soo pryuely kepte but it was understande*, 247.19; *I truste — myn cure ('luck') is not suche but some of them may sore repente thys*, 59.7; *there was neuer so harde an herted man but he wold haue wepte*, 855.16; *I wille not be soo moche a coward but she shalle vnderstande*, etc., 800.12.

(a) An extension of this construction appears in the following: *there is neyther kynge quene ne knyght — excepte my lord — and yow madame shold lette me but I shold make sir Mellyagraunce herte ful cold*, 780.3; *it is fallen so — that I may not with my worship but the quene must suffer the dethe*, 808.13.

4. *But* has the force of *than* after a comparative with a preceding negative: *Is not kyng Arthur your uncle no farther but your moders broder*, 839.33; *none other lyf but warre and stryffe*, 840.23. The commonest collocations are as follows:

(a) *no more but*: *I will aske no more — but that ye wille*, etc., 42.29; *no more but one*, 228.36.

(b) *not sooner but*: *they had not sooner sayd that word but there cam four knyghtes*, 108.5.

(c) The following passages are probably to be explained as extensions of this usage: *he had not ryden but a whyle but the knyghte badde*, etc., 210.24; *they were not in this land four dayes but there came a crye of a Iustes*, 498.22; *I fynde neuer more — of the veray certente of his deth but* ('than that') *thus was he ledde awaye*, 851.1.

5. *But* is used to introduce an object clause after the verbe *doubte* in a negative main clause: *doubte not but the vengeance wil falle*, 94.20; *doubte ye not but I wille be with you*, 600.11.

(a) *But that* appears (rarely) in the same construction: *I wold not doubte but that ye wold rescowe me*, 801.6.

(b) Sometimes the object clause appears without introductory particle: *doubte not thou shalt haue*, etc., 108.10.

6. Simple adversative (*passim*). The construction in the following may, perhaps, be regarded as transitional: *There nys none other remedye said Merlyn but god wil haue his wille*, 39.29.

### 362. *but that* (rare).

1. negative conditional (cf. *but*, 1): *it were grete shame unto myn estate but that he were myghtely withstand*, 76.5.

2. negative result (cf. *but*, 3): *ye shalle not go fer with her but that ye shalle be mette and greued*, 110.35.

3. to introduce a negative object clause, after a negative main clause: *soo subtylly made that noo man perceyue it but that they be al one*, 697.35; *I may neuer hylcye but that thou wylt torne to the world ageyn*, 854.35.<sup>1</sup> Cf. § 361.5.

### 363. *but yf*. See *but*, 1, a.

364. *by cause* is primarily an adverbial phrase. Its conjunctive use arises, as in other cases, from the construc-

<sup>1</sup> The irregular construction at 192.10 is probably due to some transposition in printing: *there was none but that he hyt surely he bare none armes that day*. Wynkyn de Worde has *he was hyt*.

tion with a *that*-clause modifying the noun *cause*. Thus *by cause that* in Chaucer and in Malory is equivalent to 'for the reason that.' This is the second stage; the third is the dropping of the *that*.<sup>1</sup>

1. subordinate causal: *by cause we understande your worthynes*, 187.1.

2. *For by cause* is sometimes used in the same sense: *for by cause I loue — my cosyn*, 210.14; *for by cause he rydeth with me*, 221.36; *for by cause this Damas is so fals*, 127.16; *for by cause I haue slayne — these knyghtes*, 805.20. This is a redundancy, but it shows that *by cause* is not yet firmly established. *For* occurs as a subordinate causal in Chaucer, and frequently in the *Morte d'Arthur* (see § 368, 2).

3. *By cause* is used sometimes as a final conjunction: *leyd them in chestys of leed, by cause they shold not chauffe ne sauoure*, 174.24 (i. e., that they might not); *she wold haue slayne Trystram by cause her chyldren shold reioyce his land*, 275.34; *Bagdemagus sente aweye his sone — by cause syr Launclot shold not mete with hym*, 483.5.

**365. by that** (rare) illustrates the fact that at this time almost any preposition might be used with conjunctive force by the simple addition of *that* (see § 388.4). As a conjunction, *by that* means *so soon as*: *by that theyr drynke was in their bodyes, they loued eyther other*, 309.37.

**366. eyther — or.**

The disjunction is frequently loose: *so shal I fynyshe it to the ende, eyther ('or else') I shal dye therfore*, 219.10; *destroye hym eyther els or dye therfor*, 80.15. Cf. § 383.

**367. ferthermore** is not yet fully established as a conjunction, but occurs in the combination *and ferthermore*.

<sup>1</sup> *For cause* appears in the same sense: *he putte sir Bryan — from his landes for cause he wold neuer be withhold with kynge Arthur*, 352.27.

**368. for.**

1. co-ordinate causal (*passim*).

2. subordinate causal: *why smote ye doune my shelld. For I wil Iuste with yow said gryffet*, 69.20; *for she had no cofer to kepe it in, she put it in the erthe*, 696.16; *for she cryed to her fader they slewe her*, 701.36.<sup>1</sup> For the subordinate causal *for cause* (*for by cause*) see § 364, and foot-note. See also *for why*, § 369.

3. *For* is sometimes used as a mere resumptive, to introduce a clause. In these cases it often seems purely expletive; but some ellipsis is probably implied, as with the Greek (καὶ) γάρ: *What newwe said the kynge is the wynde in that dore*; *for wete ye wel I wold not — to be causar to withdraue your hertes*, 269.20; *Also there was Nynyue the chyef lady of the lake, that had wedded Pelleas the good knyght and this lady had doon moche for kyng Arthur*; *for she wold neuer suffre syr Pelleas to be — in daunger*, 851.7; *but yet the heremyte knewe not in certayn that he ('it') was verayly the body of kyng Arthur*; *for thys tale syr Bedwer — made it to be wryton*, 851.15; *whan I am deed I praye you all praye for my soule*; *for this book was ended the ix yere*, etc., 861.8; *els my soule wyll be in grete perylle and I dye* (here the speech ends and the narrative is resumed as follows), *for with grete payne his varlet brought hym to the castel*, 410.1. Cf. also 56.15.

(a) In these cases *for* is used much like the introductory 'now,' Greek οὐν; and this, considering the context, is doubtless its force in the two following cases, where at first sight it seems to mean 'though' (cf. a somewhat similar use of

<sup>1</sup> Chaucer's final *for* ("for I shold the bet abreyde," *House of Fame*, 559) appears once: *for the herte shold not nyhe hem — foure knyghtes — bare a clothe of grene sylke*, 186.4.

W. has *for that* in this sense:

After the wryght the lord lett sende

*For þat he schuld wyth hym lende* ('stay'?), 106.

ἐπεὶ, as in *Plato, Protagoras*, 335, c): *whan the knyght felt that he was adrad; for he was a passynge bygge man of myghte, and anone he broughte Arthur under hym*, 72.2; *Now goo thou syr Lucan sayd the kyng —. So syr Lucan departed; for he was greuously wounded* (the context shows that he could hardly walk), 847.23.

**369. for why** is used rarely in the sense of 'because': *they coude not excuse the queene, for why she made the dyner*, 730.11; *The kyng was sore abashed of his accusacion, for why he was come att the somons of kyng Arthur*, 303.6.

**370. fro** is a temporal conjunction at 142.32 (cf. the remarks on *by that*): *Syre Gawayne fro it passed ix of the clok waxed ever stronger*. The intermediate stage with *that* does not appear.

**371. how** is sometimes used after verbs of telling, etc., without any implication of manner, like simple *that*: *the porter wente unto the duchesse and told her how ther was a knyght — wold haue herberowe*, 263.33.

**372. how be it** (rare) (for the subjunctive *be* see § 215).

1. 'yet' (co-ordinate): *How be it kyng Constantyn wold haue had them wyth hym, but they*, etc., 860.27.

2. 'although' (subordinate, cases not quite plain): *how be it as ye say that he be no man of worschyp he is a ful lykely persone*, 222.2; *notwithstandyng I wille assaye hym better how be it I am moost beholdyng to hym of any erthely man*, 246.21. Here, as in the case of *for*, and sometimes of other conjunctions, the distinction between co-ordination and subordination is by no means sharp.

**373. in as moche as**, *in soo moche that*, etc., and also *in soo moche* (*as* omitted, see § 359.3, a). A still further contraction appears in the following: *and soo moche it lyked your*



*hyhenes to graunte me my bone — I requyre you hold your promyse*, 276.10) occurs rarely and has the force of 'since': *in soo moche as she shal be brente*, 806.21; *in soo moche she hath it for youre sake*, 806.27.

**374. I putte caas** is a conjunctive phrase used (rarely), like Chaucer's "I pose" to introduce a condition: *I put caas my name were syr launcelot, & that it lyste me not to discouer my name, what shold it greue you here to kepe my counceyl*, 600.30; *I putte caas said sir Palomydes that ye were armed — and I naked — what wold ye doo*, 608.17.

**375. ne.**

1. *ne* as simple negative adverb is rare: <sup>1</sup> *whos vyrgynyte ne was perysshed*, 703.10; *he ne was lede*, 707.12 (cf. § 195).

2. *ne* has usually the sense of *nor*: *I owe hym none homage ne none of myn elders*, 74.35; *I care not ne I doubtte hem not*, 221.5.<sup>2</sup>

**376. nevertheles** occurs both alone and with a preceding *but*.

**377. neyder — nor, neyther — nor, neyther — ne.**

1. with *neyther* omitted: *hors ne harneys getest thou none*, 222.11.

**378. nor** (see above).

1. *no — nor*: *no shame nor wylony*, 227.24.

2. *nor — nor* (rare): *nor for welc, nor for woo*, 355.26.

3. *not — nor*: *not brysed nor hurte*, 229.14.

<sup>1</sup> W. (more common): *I ne can come owte*, 185. W. has also *ne — ne*: *Ther ys [ne] kyng ne emperoure*, 88. The former *ne* is a conjecture of Mr. Furnivall's. It may be a false insertion, for W. has elsewhere the former *ne* omitted: *Mete ne drynke ne getyst þou none*, 212.

<sup>2</sup> *Not ne* at 242.24 is difficult to understand, unless there is some omission: *he rode here and there and wyste not ne where*.

4. simple *nor*: *your grete trauaill nor good loue shal not be lost*, 242.14.

**379. nother** — **ne** (see above): *nother my frende ne my foo*, 214.14. Cf. modern Scotch "nowther."

**380. onles** (rare). *On lesse* that is, as usual, the transitional stage. A form *onles thenne* that occurs once: *Nay said sire Launcelot — I wil not telle you my name, onles thenne that ye telle me your name*, 346.26.

**381. or** (see *outher*, the earlier form), disjunctive.

1. *Or* *els* has practically the force of *unless* in two cases: *he gaf me suche charge — that I shold neuer discover* ('disclose') *hym wntyl he requyred me or els it be knowen openly*, 241.28; *ful lothe I am there shold be ony bataille. Ye shalle not chese sayd the other lady or els youre knyghte withdrawe hym*, 675.10.

**382. or** temporal (by confusion with the preceding). Langland has the prepositional forms *ar* and *or*. (See *Stratmann*.)

1. *Or* is properly a preposition. (For the earlier adverbial and nominal forms see *Stratmann*, under *ær*.) Cf. *or*, § 342.

2. The transitional stage, as usual, is *or that*.

3. *Or* as a temporal conjunction is common: *or I departe*, 230.3.

4. *Or euer* is a common intensive form: *or euer that grete spere brake*, 192.8.<sup>1</sup>

**383. outhur** (see *cyther*), *other*.

1. *outhur* — *outhur*: *outhur they shalle be ouercome — outhur els they shal*, etc., 198.9.

<sup>1</sup> W. For þou schalt worke or euer þou goo, 344.

2. *outhur* (*other*) — *or*: *other I shal encheue hym or blode of the best blood of my body*, 66.4; *outhur I wille wyynne worship — or dye*, 236.25.<sup>1</sup>

3. *Outher* alone means 'or (else)' (cf. § 366): *I wylle be slayne outhur truly beten*, 223.4.

(a) *Other els* is also used in the same sense: *they asked — truage — other els themperour wold destroye hym*, 70.4.

### 384. *sauf*.

1. *Sauf* is properly a preposition (see § 345).

2. *Sauf that* is the intermediate stage.

3. *Sauf* as a conjunction is rare: *they myght not londe — sauf there was another ship*, 691.27; *was open withoute any keypyng sauf two lyons kept the entre*, 710.9.

(a) *Sauf onelye* occurs in Caxton's Preface: *sauf onelye it accordeth to the worde of god*, 3.2.

### 385. *so* (cf. *as*, § 359).

1. conditional: *I graunte the thy lyf so thou wilt be sworn*, etc., 185.22; *All your entente — I wylle fulfyll*, *soo ye wyl brynge me*, etc., 193.9.

2. *So that* occurs frequently in the same sense: *I shal helpe you — soo that ye hold me a promyse*, 187.25; *he graunted hym so that he wold telle hym*, 189.7. This, doubtless, shows the transitional stage. Indeed the underlying idea of manner is sometimes plain: *I will not take your yeldyng vnto me, but so that ye wylle yelde you vnto syr kay*, 200.32.

3. *So* is common as an introductory illative particle.

4. *So — as, so — that*, etc. The correlation is often very loose (cf. *as — as*). The *as* is omitted quite regularly before an infinitive: *neuer none be soo hardy to doo away this gyrdel*, 694.9; *soo — whiche* occurs: *I haue none soo hyghe a*

<sup>1</sup> W. If my flowers ouper fade or falle, 268.

*thyngc whiche were worthy to susteyne soo hyhe a suerd*, 698.9. Cf. §§ 249, 359.3.

(a) Sometimes this loose correlation becomes absolute anacoluthon: *syr Launcelot encreased soo merueyllously in worship and in honour, therfor he is the fyrst knygt*, etc., 183.12; *eyther knyght smote other so hard in myddes of theyr sheldes*, but *syr Gawwayns spere brak*, 142.17. Sometimes *so* is followed, not by any conjunction at all, but by a preposition: *Gareth rode soo longe in that forest untyl the nyghte came*, 263.23.

**386. sythen** (*syth(c)*, *syn*) shows the regular stages of development, (a) adverb, (b) *sythe that*, etc., (c) subordinate causal.

**387. than.**

1. *Thenne* (adverb) and *than* (conjunction) are usually differentiated in spelling; but sometimes the latter is used for the former. (The differentiation was not firmly established in the language until after Elizabeth's time. Bacon, for instance, spells the word *then* in both senses.)

2. The conjunction of the second member of a comparison is sometimes loosely omitted after *than*, particularly if that conjunction be *yf*: *Now am I better pleasyd sayd Pryamus than* (if) *thou haddest gyuen to me al the prounce and parys the riche. I had leuer to haue ben torn with wyld horses than* (that) *ony varlet had wonne suche loos*, 178.1; *and yf thou haue broughte Arthurs wyf dame Gweneuer, he shalle be gladder than* (if) *thou haddest gyuen to hym half fraunce*, 167.24.

3. Still more irregular is the correlation at 699.16: *a grete whyle the thre felawes biheld the bedde and the thre spyndels than they were at certayne that they were of naturel colours*. (It is possible, however, that *than* is for *thenne*, and is meant to begin a new sentence.)

**388. that.**

1. of purpose (*passim*).<sup>1</sup>

2. of result (*passim*): *smote the other knyghte a grete buffet that his hors turned twyes aboute*, 185.14; *I shalle putte an enchauntement upon hym, that he shalle not awake*, 186.14.

(a) But *so that* is used also in the same sense. The incipient construction of *that* alone as a conjunction of result survives, perhaps, in passages like the following: *and soo he flewe ouer his hors taylle that his helme butte in to the erthe a foote and more that nyhe his neck was broken*, 191.31.

3. causal (rare): *god is wrothe with the that thou wolt neuer haue done*, 61.10; *he dredde that the knyghtes castel was soo nygh*, 209.33.

(a) The following passages show a similar use. *That* is equivalent to 'in that': *thou hast begyled me foule — that thou kepte my rynges*, 262.37; *for naturel loue that he was his vnkel*, 689.27.

4. *That* is added to various particles to give them conjunctive force. In all such cases it will be found that the root idea is of a substantive clause governed by a preposition, or an adjective clause agreeing with a noun. The former case is illustrated by the conjunction *or that*; the latter, by the conjunction *while that*.

(a) *That* added to adverbs and adverbial phrases gives the conjunctions *as that*, *by cause that*, *onles that*, *so that*, *though that*, *whyle that*, *the whyle that*, *the meane whyle that*. The conjunction *whan that* is derived from an interrogative adverb.

(b) *That* added to prepositions gives the conjunctions *after that*, *by that*, *for that*, *or that*, *sauf that*, *syn* (*syth(en)*) *that*, *tofore that*, *tyl that*, *vntyl that*.

<sup>1</sup> W. sometimes omits: *Nowe helpe his lyne were dyght*, 465.

(c) In *yf that*, *that* is added, by analogy, to a conjunction.<sup>1</sup>

(d) Most of the forms cited above are common in Chaucer. The *Morte d'Arthur* differs only in the freer discarding of *that* from old forms, and its free application to make new ones.

**389. though**, *thou*; (cf. remarks on *sythen*).

**390. tofore** (cf. remarks on *sythen*).

**391. tyl** (*vntyl*, cf. remarks on *by that*).

**392. vnto** (rare, cf. remarks on *by that*). The successive stages are as follows:

(a) *vnto the tyme that thou be callyd*, etc., 242.5.

(b) *vnto the tyme sire la cote male tayle was hole*, 352.18.

(c) *vnto I mette wyth one of them*, 240.4; *vnto they came to the Bordoure*, 349.12.

**393. whan(ne)**, (cf. § 388.4, a).

1. *by thenne* is sometimes used with the force of *whan*: *by than they were redy on horsbak there were vij C knyghtes*, 49.29; *by thenne he was at most vnarmed he felle in a dedely swoune*, 249.25; *by thenne then* (misprint for *thou*) *come there thou shall fynde quene Gueneuer dede*, 856.29.

**394. wherfor(e)** (*werfor*, rare) is frequently illative in the sense of *therefore*.

**395. whether** (*wether*, rare) is properly an interrogative pronoun. The transitional stage is seen in the following: *whether that I lyue or dye*, 206.33.

1. *whether* is used without a following *or*, in the sense of 'if': *to wete whether he wylle knowe me*, 217.9.

2. *whether* is used expletively to introduce a double

<sup>1</sup> So W. Fekyll or fals *yf þat* sche be, 122.

question (like Greek  $\pi\acute{o}\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\nu$ ): *whether cometh this of the or of thy sone*, 102.17.

**396. whyle**, *whyles(t)*, (*wyle*, rare).

1. The adverbial phrases are *the meane whyle*, *this meane whyle*.

2. The transition is plainly shown: *alle the whyle the beest dranke*, 65.30; *the meane whyle that*, 130.5; *whyte that* (*passim*).

3. The force of *whyte* as a temporal conjunction sometimes varies slightly: *whyte I wold haue taken you to mercy ye wold none aske*, 112.20 ('when'); *syr Launcelot strouned and laye longe styll whyte the hermyte came*, 857.29 ('until').<sup>1</sup>

**397. withoute** (cf. remarks on *by that*) is used in the sense of 'unless': *without he doo me homage*, 75.3; *without ye haue my counceill*, 85.14; *without ye rescowe me*, 315.19.

**398. with this** and *with that* (cf. remarks on *by that*) are used as conjunctive phrases of condition: *With this — I may be delyuerd — I wylle doo the batail*, 127.25; *we wyl not be lothe — with that we kneue your name*, 203.19.

**399. yf** is comparatively infrequent except in the combination *and yf*. It seems likely, therefore, that *and* is regarded as the ordinary conditional, and that *yf* is used to avoid *and and*. This may explain the persistence of *an if* in Elizabethan literature.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> W. Better ys me þus to doo  
*Whyte yt must nedys be do*, 383 ('since'?).

<sup>2</sup> W. The wyfe seyde "so mutt I haue hele,  
*And yf þi worke be wrought wele*  
*Thou schalt haue to dyne*," 241.





## APPENDIX.

---

### THE SYLLABIC VALUE OF THE PLURAL *-es*.

It is proposed here to inquire briefly how far the plural *-es* in the *Morte d'Arthur* retains its original syllabic value.

I. Rejecting from the count those nouns to which the sibilant sound of the plural sign necessarily adds a syllable (*dyches*, *hedges*, *mosses*, etc.), let us consider first those cases in which the plural *-es* may be referred to a singular *-e*. If this *-e* seems regularly to have syllabic value, if it seems to be felt in speech, then in these cases the plural *-es* also probably had syllabic value. If, on the other hand, *-e* seems to be disregarded in the singular, then there is antecedent probability for the supposition that it was disregarded also in the plural.

Nouns having *-e* in the singular may be divided into two classes:

(1) nouns in which the *-e* is derived from old French or old English:

French — *realme*, *mesure*, *medecyne*, *heremyte*, etc.

English — *woode*, *wounde*, *tere*, *scathe*, *stede*, *wede*, *throte*, etc.

(2) nouns in which the *-e* is excrescent, added usually by analogy: *bedde* (O. E. *bed*), *cole* (O. E. *col*), *myrthe* (O. E. *myrð*), *threde* (O. E. *þræð*).

(3) Now the number of nouns assuming this analogical or "decorative" *-e* is very great (*Römstedt*, pp. 5, 6, 37), and, what is still more significant, many nouns assume it or drop it at will:

(a) French nouns in *-r* appear now with *-e*, now without: *tour(e)*, *armour(e)*, *traytour(e)*, *bottler(e)*, *deuoyr(e)*, *displeasyr(e)*.

(b) Many other French nouns show the same indifference: *buffet(te)*, *engyn(e)*, *forest(e)*, *gardyn(e)*, *pray(e)* ('prey'), etc.

(c) The variation appears even where the French original has *-e*: *champayn(e)*, *entent(e)*.

(d) The same is true of the commonest English nouns: *hert(e)* and *wood(e)*, with *-e* derived from O. E.; *deth(e)*, with *-e* ex-crescent.

(4) The syllabification of these nouns can hardly have been affected by the presence or absence of this arbitrary *-e* (cf. § 26). Hence it seems antecedently probable that the plural *-es* also was losing its syllabic value.

II. Of those *-es* plurals which are not to be referred to a singular in *-e*, the more significant cases are as follows:

(1) French nouns in *-aunt*.

These do not assume *-e* in the singular. The plural is either *-s* or *-es*: *servaunt(e)s*, *mescreaunt(e)s*, *pursyaunt(e)s*, *sergeaunt(e)s*. Whatever may have been the usual accent of these words, the syllabic value of the *-es* can hardly be assumed when it is remembered that corresponding nouns in Chaucer, even when oxytone, usually make a plural in *-z* (*servauntz*, etc., *Ten Brink*, 228 and 226).

(2) French nouns in *-ment*.

These are fairly uniform in rejecting *-e* from the singular. The plural is always *-es*: *argumentes*, *enchauntementys*, *turnementys*, *instrumentys*, etc. In Chaucer these nouns commonly have an oxytone accent, either primary or secondary. But in Chaucer they sometimes make the plural in *-s* (or in *-z*, *Ten Brink*, 228): instruments, arguments, *Parlement of Foules*, 197, 538; parements, ornaments, *Legend of Good Women*, 1106, 1107. In the *Morte d'Arthur*, though the plural is always *-es*, the singular is not invariable, such forms as *parlemente*, 839.5, and *poyntementte*, 845.29, occurring occasionally.

(3) French nouns in *-ail(le)* and *-cil(le)*.

These have double forms for both singular and plural: *bataille* and *batail*, plural *batailles* and *batails*; so with *merueil(le)* and *counceyl(le)*. It is possible, but not probable, that these double forms represent two pronunciations, the accent hovering, as in the case of many French nouns in Chaucer.

(4) French nouns in *-y*, *-ay*, and *-ey* make the plural in *-es*: *maystry* (O. F. *maistrie*), plural *maystryes*. So *party* (O. F. *parti*), *palfray* (E. E. *palefrai*), *countrey* (also *countre*, O. F. *contree*; Chaucer, *contre*). In Chaucer, plurals in *-yes* (*-ies*) from nouns in *-ye* (*-ie*) keep or lose the syllabic value of the *-es* according to the incidence of the accent; plurals in *-ees*, from nouns in *-ee* (*-e*) (as *contre*), lose it; plurals in *-ayes* and *-eyes*, from nouns in *-ay* and *-ey*, usually keep it (see *Ten Brink*, 225).

English plurals in *-yes* (*-ies*), (*ladyes*, *bodyes*), the accent being on the first syllable of the word, lose the syllabic value of the *-es* (see *Ten Brink*, 219).

No definite conclusion can be drawn from these words in the *Morte d'Arthur* until the accent is settled. But since the accent tended naturally toward the English habit, i. e., away from the final syllable, the syllabic value of the *-es* would tend to be lost. Occasional forms, such as the plural *hakneis* (from *hackney*), point in the same direction.

(5) Oxytones in *-ld*, *-nd*, *-rd* make the plural in *-es*.

French — *amendys*, *bendys*, *rewardys*, etc.

English — *feldes*, *wyndes*, *swardes*, *lordes*, etc.

Though these nouns are uniform in the plural, they are not uniform in the singular. Cf. such forms as *shelde* and *frende*.

(6) English oxytones in *-lk*, *-nk*, *-rk* make the plural in *-es*: *folkes*, *monkes*, *thankes*, *clerkes*, *workes*. Some French nouns in *-k* also take the *-es* plural: *mockes*, *hauberkes*.

(7) Very many other oxytones, both French and English, especially those in *-l*, *-r*, *-n* and *-t*, make the plural in *-es*; but most of them have *-e* in the singular, and many of the others are not known so to end, simply because the singular happens not to occur (cf. 5).

III. The direct evidence for the syllabic value of the plural *-es* seems, therefore, to be somewhat slight. On the other hand, the grounds for assuming the *-es* to be merely graphic are of no little weight. They are, in brief, as follows:

(a) The increasing number of nouns in which the plural is written *-s*.

(b) The indifference with which many common nouns take either *-s* or *-es*.

(c) The fact that a plural in *-es* may commonly be traced to a singular having an excrescent *-e* of no syllabic value.

IV. Still further confirmation of the theory that the plural *-es* is merely graphic, is given by the following cases. The French nouns *traytour* and *gardyn* sometimes assume *-e* in the singular, but always make the plural in *-s*. The French nouns *gysarme*, *montayne* and *aduenture* derive the *-e* from the old French. *Gysarme* and *montayne* make the plural in *-s*. *Aduenture* is sometimes written *aduentur*, but always makes the plural in *-es*. Such confusion could hardly exist if the *-es* were felt in speech.

(a) Incidental confirmation is sometimes given by the genitive *-es*. *Thryes*, with adverbial (gen.) *-es*, is sometimes written *thryse*. The pronunciation was probably the same in both cases.

V. But no positive conclusion can be reached without further knowledge regarding the accentuation, and this can be gained only through a complete examination of fifteenth-century poetry.

# INDEX.

The references are to the sections of the grammar.

For *strong verbs*, see the alphabetical list at p. 49. The *prepositions* are discussed in alphabetical order, pp. 108-128; the *conjunctions*, pp. 128-143.

## A

Ability, *may* and *can*, 265 b, 274.  
*about*, with the infinitive, 259.  
 abstract nouns, plural of, 14.  
 adjectives, inflection, 26-30, 71.  
   — as nouns, 45.  
   — in *-ly*, 52 h.  
   — in pairs, 46.  
 adverbial suffixes, 52.  
 adverbs in *-ly*, contract, 37.  
   — relative, 53.  
*al*, 71.  
*all thyng*, 117.  
 analogy, in ablaut series, 136, 138, 148, 151.  
   — in weak preterits, 172, 175.  
*and that*, 88.  
 anomalous verbs. 2 sing., 208.  
 antecedent omitted, 116.  
 anticipatory conditions, 210-212.  
 apposition, 22.  
   — clauses of, 230, 231.  
 appositive infinitive, 241-244.  
 article, 91-94.  
   — definite, expletive, 94.  
   — singular, with plural noun, 15.  
   — *that*, used as, 91.  
*arraunt*, 185.

*aryuen* (ptc.), 156.  
*as*, in compound relatives, 53 b, 64 b.  
*as*, in unreal conditions, 213 a.  
*aske*, 314 a.  
*attaynte* (ptc.), 176.  
*atte*, 92.

## B

*Backer* (comv.), 39.  
*be* (auxiliary), 198, 264.  
*benime*, 314.  
*bereue*, 314.  
*beware*, followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 e.  
*bothe*, 72.  
*brother*, 10 c.  
*buryellys*, 14 a.  
*bydde*, followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 d.  
*byseche*, followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 a.

## C

*Can* (auxiliary), 201, 265.  
*cases*, confusion of, in pronouns, 81.  
*caught* (pret.), 175.

causal clauses, sequence, 261 d.  
 causative auxiliaries, 260, 269, 271, 273.  
*certain*, 129, 324. 3, 334. 7.  
*charge* (v.), followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 c.  
*commande* (v.), followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 c.  
*comparative*, 32-34.  
 — of adverbs, 39, 40.  
 — double, 41, 42.  
 — with *more*, 42 a.  
 complementary final clauses, 232, 291 b, 303 a.  
 concessive clauses, 227, 261 e.  
 conditions, ideal, 210-212, 215, 219, 230.  
 — unreal, 213, 214, 220, 288, 302, 309.  
 — sequence, 261 a.  
 consecutive clauses, 225, 226.  
 consonant doubling, 159.  
 contraction, of definite article, 93.  
 — of Romance participles, 176.  
 — with *ne*, 195.  
 — with *thou*, 197.  
 — with *to*, 196.  
 — in 3 pers. of verbs, 178.  
 co-ordination, loose, 255.  
*coste* (pret.), 175.  
*councille* (v.), followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 c.  
*couer* (v.), 174 and a.

## D

*Dar*, 202.  
 dative, inflection, 11.  
 — neuter, of pronouns, 58.  
 — of indirect object, 20 a, 80 a.  
 — of interest, 20 c, 80 b.

dative with impersonal verbs, 20 b, 80 d, e.  
 — with adjectives, 80 c.  
*delyuer*, 174.  
 demonstrative pronouns, 60-62, 88-94.  
 derivative suffixes, variations, 12, 31, 33.  
*discomfyte* (ptc.), 176.  
*distracte* (ptc.), 176.  
*do* (auxiliary), 199, 266-268.  
 double comparative, 41, 42.  
 doubling of consonants, 159.  
*drede*, 163.  
*drenche*, 164.  
*dwelle*, 163.  
*dye* (*dye*), 169.

## E

-e, in adjectives, 27-30.  
 — in the preterit of strong verbs, 158.  
 — in the preterit of weak verbs, 162.  
 — in the nom. sing. of nouns, Appendix.  
*eche other*, 132.  
*-en*, plural, 7.  
*entre* (v.), 174 a.  
*-er*, F. verbs in, 174.  
*ere*, 34.  
*-es*, plural, Appendix.  
*euer*, in compound relatives, 64 d.  
*euery*, 77.  
*eueryche other*, 132.  
*eyther*, 118.  
 — *other*, 132.

## F

*Fader*, 10 c.  
*farre*, 34.

fearing, construction with expressions of, 290 b, 303 b.

*fetche*, 170.

*fette*, pret. and ptc., 170.

final clauses, 222-224, 261 c, 290, 291 b.

— complementary, 232, 291 b.

*formest*, 34.

*forth dayes*, 19.

future, periphrases with *shall* and *will*, 307.

future, periphrases with *shold* and *wold*, 308.

*fyers*, 36.

## G

*Gadre*, 174 a.

*gamen*, 7 a.

*gar* (auxiliary), 269.

general relative clauses, 218.

genitive adverbial, 38.

— in *-es*, 9.

— in *of*-phrases, 17.

— in *-s*, 8.

— invariable, 10.

— in *-ys*, 9 b.

— modified by an *of*-phrase, 18.

— neuter, of pronouns, 57.

— of the relative, 112.

— partitive, with numerals, 16.

— “ in *of*-phrase, 79.

— supplanted by *his*, p. 21, note.

— with adverb of time, 19.

gerundive infinitive, 248.

*gyrd* (pret. and ptc.), 166.

## H

*Had leuer*, 245 a.

*hātan*, 315.

*haue* (auxiliary), 260 a, b, and note, 270.

*herte*, 10 d.

hindering, verbs of, 246.

*hoole*, 47.

*hurte* (pret.), 175.

*hyghe*, 34.

## I

Ideal conditions, 210-212, 215, 219, 230.

imperative, inflection, 177, 182.

— expressed by *shall*, 283 a.

— expressed by *will*, 292 a.

imperative subjunctive, 235, 236.

impersonal verbs, 20 b, 80 d, e, 281, 312.

indefinite pronouns, 70-75, 77, 117-129.

indefinite relative clauses, 215-217.

indirect discourse, sequence, 263.

indirect object, 20 a, 80 a.

indirect question, 228, 229.

infinitive, inflection, 177, 181.

— absolute, 250.

— active, after causative auxiliaries, 266, 269, 271, 273.

— active, after *it is*, 319.

— appositive, 240 a, 241-244, 319.

— gerundive, 248.

— object, 245-247.

— of result, 249.

— perfect (with *haue*) for present, 260.

— subject, 240-244.

— with causative auxiliaries, 271-273.

— with *for to*, 238.

— with and without *to*, 237.

— with resumptive *to*, 239.

intensive pronouns, 130, 131.

interrogative pronouns, 95-99.

## K

Kindred, nouns of, genitive, 10 c.

## L

*Lady*, 10 d.  
*lasse*, 48 b (foot-note).  
*lede*, 163.  
*let* (auxiliary), 271, 272.  
*loke* (v.), followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 e.  
*longe*, 34.  
*-ly*, adjectives in, 52 h.  
 — adverbs in, 37.  
*lycours*, 37.  
*lyke*, 334 6.  
*lytel*, 34.

## M

*Make* (auxiliary), 273.  
*maner*, 24.  
*may* (auxiliary), 203, 274-278.  
 — in final clauses, 224 a, 277 a.  
 — in ideal conditions, 212.  
 — in indefinite relative clauses, 217.  
 — in indirect questions, 277 b.  
*me* (*men*), 73.  
*merueyille*, 25 a.  
*moche*, 48 b.  
*moder*, 10 c.  
*more*, 42 a, 48.  
*must* (auxiliary), 204, 279.  
*myghte* (auxiliary), 274-277.  
 — in final clauses, 224 a, 277 a.  
 — in ideal conditions, 211.  
 — indirect questions, 277 b.

## N

*Ne*, 195.  
*nede*, 25 b.  
*nere* (comv.), 34.

*none*, 121, 127.  
 nouns as verbs, 23.  
 numerals, pronoun construction with, 86.

## O

Object clauses, 233, 234, 291, 303.  
 objective, adverbial, 21.  
 objective infinitive, 245-247.  
 objects, verbs taking two, 246, 314.  
 obligation, expressed by *must*, 279.  
 — by *owe* and *ought*, 280, 281 c.  
 — by *shall* and *shold*, 282.  
*offre*, 174 a.  
*old*, 34.  
*one*, 119, 120.  
*ony*, 122-124.  
*other*, 49, 74, 125-127, 132 d.  
*ought* (auxiliary), 207, 280, 281.  
*owe*, 207, 280.  
*owne*, 130.

## P

Participle, inflection, 177, 183-185.  
 — absolute, 253-256.  
 — modifying, 251, 252.  
 — reference of, 252.  
 — Romance, contracted, 176.  
 — of weak verbs in *-enche*, *-enge*, 164.  
 partitive genitive, 16.  
 passive, 315-319.  
 perfect (infinitive) with *haue*, for present, 260.  
 personal and impersonal constructions, 312 a.  
 personal pronouns, 54-59, 76-87.  
 pluperfect (with *had*) for preterit, 260.  
 plural (of nouns) in *-en*, 7.



plural (of nouns) in *-es*, Appendix.  
 — — in *-s*, 1.  
 — — in *-ys*, 3.  
 — — invariable, 4-6.  
 — of abstract nouns, 14.  
 — with singular article, 15.  
 plural (of verbs), 177.  
 — — in *-s*, 180.  
 — — in *-th*, 179.  
 possibility, *may* and *can*, 265 b, 274.  
*præc*, followed by the subjunctive, 232. 1 a.  
 present, anticipatory, 258.  
 — progressive, 257.  
 preterit and participial forms confused, 142, 157.  
 — for perfect, 262 a.  
 — for pluperfect, 262 b.  
 — inflection, 186-194.  
 — of weak verbs without umlaut, 165.  
 — plural assimilated to preterit singular, 152.  
 — 2 sing. of strong verbs, 186 a.  
 — 2 sing. of weak verbs, 191, 208 a.  
 — 2 sing. of anomalous verbs, 208.  
 prolepsis, 85.  
 promise, *shall* and *will*, 306.  
 pronouns, demonstrative, 60-62, 88-94.  
 — indefinite, 70-75, 77, 117-129.  
 — intensive, 130, 131.  
 — — as subject, 131.  
 — interrogative, 95-99.  
 — personal, as indefinite, 128.  
 — — as reflexives, 87.  
 — — confusion of cases, 81.  
 — — confusion of gender, 59.

pronouns, personal, construction with numerals, etc., 86.  
 — — dative, 80.  
 — — *his* for the genitive, p. 21, note.  
 — — in relative periphrases, 113.  
 — — neuter dative, 58.  
 — — neuter genitive, 57.  
 — — *of*-phrase for the genitive, 78.  
 — — omission of pronoun subject, 82.  
 — — partitive genitive in *of*-phrase, 79.  
 — — 2 plur. for 2 sing., 76.  
 — — 3 plur. for indefinite sing., 77.  
 — — reference obscure, 84.  
 — — repetition of pronoun subject, 83.  
 — reciprocal, 132.  
 — reflexive, 87.  
 — relative, 63-69, 100-116.  
 — — antecedent omitted, 116.  
 — — omitted, 114, 115.  
 — — periphrases for the genitive, 112, 113.  
 pronoun subject omitted, 82.  
 — — repeated, 83.  
*pyghte* (pret.), 172.  
*pyte*, 25 c.

## Q

*quyte* (pret.), 175.

## R

*Rawge*, 10 d.  
 reciprocal pronouns, 132.  
*recreaunt*, 185.

reflexive pronouns, 87.  
 — verbs, 313.  
 relative adverbs, 53.  
 — pronouns, 63-69, 100-116.  
 — — antecedent omitted, 116.  
 — — compound, with *as*, 53 b.  
     64 b.  
 — — — with *that*, 64 a, 108,  
     109.  
 — — — genitive, 112, 113.  
 — — — omitted, 114, 115.  
 — — — prolepsis, 85.  
 — clauses, general, 218.  
 — — — indefinite, 215-217.  
*requyre*, 314 a.  
*rescoves*, 14 a.  
 resolve, *shall* and *will*, 305.  
*reson*, 25 d.  
 result, clauses of, 225, 226.  
 — infinitive of, 249.  
 resumptive *to*, with the infinitive,  
     239.  
*reysd*, 169.

## S

*-s* plural, of nouns, 1.  
*schryche*, 169.  
*self*, 50, 87, 130.  
*sende* (pret.), 166.  
 sequence of tenses, 260-263.  
*sette* and *sytte*, 155.  
*shall* (auxiliary), 205, 282-291.  
 — in ideal conditions, 212.  
 — in indefinite relative clauses,  
     217.  
 — of injunction and threat, 283.  
 — of necessity, 282 a.  
 — of promise, 286.  
 — of resolve, 287.  
 — of simple futurity, 284.  
 — and *will*, confusion 304-311.

*shold*, in clauses of apposition,  
     231 a, 289.  
 — in final clauses, 224 b, 290,  
     291 b, c.  
 — in ideal conditions, 211.  
 — in indefinite relative clauses,  
     216.  
 — in unreal conditions, 214, 288.  
 — of necessity, obligation, 282.  
 — of simple futurity, 285.  
*so*, followed by *which*-clause, 104.  
 — in compound relatives, 64 c.  
*somme*, 75.  
*southard*, 52 f. 2.  
*sprenge*, 164.  
*spyrtyueltees*, 14 a.  
*sterte*, 169.  
*stretche*, 165.  
 subject, pronoun, omitted, 82.  
 — — repeated, 83.  
 subjunctive imperative, 235, 236.  
 — in concessive clauses, 227.  
 — in conditions, 210-214.  
 — in consecutive clauses, 225,  
     226.  
 — inflection, 177, 193.  
 — in final clauses, 222-224.  
 — in general relative clauses,  
     218.  
 — in indefinite relative clauses,  
     215-217.  
 — in indirect question, 228, 229.  
 — in substantive clauses, 230-  
     234.  
 — in temporal clauses, 219-221.  
 substantive clauses, 230-234, 289-  
     291, 303.  
*suehe*, 51.  
 suffixes, adverbial, 52.  
 — derivative, variations, 12, 31,  
     33.

*suffre*, 174 a.  
 superlative, 32, 35.  
 — contract, 36.  
 — in comparison of two, 44.  
 — with *of*-phrase, 43.  
 supposing, verbs of, followed by  
 the subjunctive, 234.  
 syncope, 13, 160, 174.  
*synnen*, 7 b.  
*syster*, 10 c.  
*sytte* and *sette*, 155.

## T

*Teld* (pret.), 165.  
 temporal clauses, 219-221, 261 b.  
 — with the indicative, 221.  
 — with the subjunctive, 219-  
 220.  
 tenses, sequence, 260-263.  
 — perfect infinitive (with *haue*)  
 for present, 260.  
 — pluperfect (with *hadde*) for  
 preterit, 260.  
*that*, after *so*, 104 a.  
 — as article, 91.  
 — as compound relative, 101.  
 — in the sense of 'such,' 89.  
 — as simple relative, 65, 100.  
 — in compound relatives, 64 a, d,  
 108, 109.  
*that as*, 110.  
*that that*, 68.  
*thet*, 60 (note 1).  
*the whiche*, 67, 102.  
*this*, of persons, 90.  
*threste* (pret.), 171.  
*thryst* (pret.), 171.  
*to*, resumptive with the infinitive,  
 239.  
 two objects, verbs taking, 246, 314.

## U

Uniformity, tendency toward, 209.  
 unreal conditions, 213, 214, 220,  
 288, 302, 309.  
 — with protasis implied, 213 b.  
*uttermost*, 34.

## W

*walloft(e)* (pret.), 175.  
*ward* (suffix), 52 f.  
*ware* (pret.), 156.  
*wayte*, followed by the subjunctive,  
 232. 1 e.  
 weakening of strong verbs, 153, 154.  
*what*, adjective use, 105.  
 — as indefinite, 106.  
 — in the sense of *who*, 97.  
 — in the sense of *why*, 98.  
*what a*, 97 a.  
*what that*, 109 a.  
*what-what*, 106 a.  
*where*, 52 g.  
*whereof*, 112.  
*whether*, as interrogative, 96.  
 — as relative, 66.  
*whether as*, 69.  
*whiche*, after *so* and *such*, 104.  
 — as adjective, 102.  
*whiche that*, 109 c.  
*who*, as interrogative, 99.  
 — as relative, 65, 107.  
*who that*, 109 a, b.  
*whyle*, 52 g.  
*will* (auxiliary), 200, 292-303.  
 — followed by the subjunctive,  
 232. 1 b and 2, 233.  
 — in complementary final claus-  
 es, 303 a.  
 — of promise, 299.  
 — of resolve, 292. 1.

*will* of simple futurity, 300.  
 — of willingness, 296.  
 — of wish, 294.  
 — and *shall*, confusion, 304-311.  
*wish*, expressed by *will* and *would*,  
 294, 295.  
 — expressions of, followed by  
 the subjunctive, 232, 233.  
 — — followed by *shall*, 291 c.  
 — — followed by *should*, 291 b,  
 310.  
 — — followed by *would*, 310.  
*would*, after verbs of fearing, 303 b.  
 — in complementary final clauses, 303 a.

*would* in the apodosis of unreal conditions, 302.  
 — of customary action, 298.  
 — of intention, 301.  
 — of resolve, 293.  
 — of willingness, 297.  
 — of wish, 295.  
*wonder*, 25 e.

## Y

*y*-, prefixed to ptc., 194.  
*yd*, variant in pret. and ptc.,  
 190.  
*yll*, 34.



University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388

Return this material to the library  
from which it was borrowed.

OCT 19 1998

7

PSC



3 1158 00504 8854

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



**AA** 000 356 063 8

Un